THE

FIFTH BOOK

OF THE

Moſt Pleaſant and Delectable

HISTORY

OF

AMADIS De GAULE,

Containing the firſt Part of the moſt ſtrange, valiant, and worthy Acts of ESPLANDIAN Son to *Amadis De Gaule* : As his ſtrange ſayling in the *Great Serpent*, the Winning of his Sword, the Conqueſt of the Caſtle of *The Defended Mountain*:

His Warres with *Armato* King of *Turky*, his Love to *Leonorine* Daughter to the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, with divers Services done in her behalf.

The Beſieging of *Conſtantinople* by the Turks and Pagans, with their Overthrow by the Princes: His Marriage with *Leonorine*, his Inveſting in the Empire of *GREECE*.

And laſtly, His Inchantment with divers other Princes in the Pallace of *Apollidon* deviſed by *Urganda*.

London, Printed by *T. F.* for *Andrew Kembe* at St *Margarets-Hill* in *Southwark*, and *Charls Tyus* at the Three Bibles on *London-Bridge*. 1664.

THE PRINTER TO THE READER.

Courteous Reader,

IT is not long since I printed the History of *Palladine* of *England*, in the *Advertisement* whereof I promised the sudden publishing of this which is now perfected, and I now intend to proceed in the performance of what I therein further promised, which was, not onely to proceed in the printing and publishing of more Parts of this History, but also in publishing that so much desired, and long-expected Piece, called, *The Second Part of* Don Bellianis *of*

Greece, which I now assure you is in the Press, and will be finished about a month hence. And the Author of that hath proceeded, not onely in continuing that History in a third Part, which I am confident will be very pleasant and delightful, but also in translating more parts of this excellent History, which shall all be published with all convenient expedition. And now, Gentle Reader, hoping that the Book-seller and my self shall receive so good Encouragement in these Pieces already published, that we shall not have occasion to repent our selves of our pains, cost, and trouble, which is all intended for thy delight, I remain thine in all friendship,

T. F.

THE

THE FIFTH BOOK OF AMADIS DE GAULE,

Containing part of the valiant Acts of *Esplandian* his Son, and others.

CHAP. I.

How *Esplandian* sleeping in the great Serpent, when he awaked, he found himself to be at the foot of the Rock of the Enchauntress, and what happened unto him.

ESplandian, that had fallen asleep in the Serpent by means of the melodious noise of trumpets, that the six Gentlewomen sounded along the shoar, after he had received the order of Knighthood, as it hath been declared unto you in the end of our fourth book, when he awaked was much abashed that he saw not any of the company that were there present when the Giant Balan dubbed him Knight, but found himself alone between the wings of that monstrous beast, at the foot of a rock unknown to him, which rock was so high, that he thought it impossible to climb up, but he was perswaded that Urganda la Descog-

neve (whose works and enterprises were most wonderful) had ordained it to be so, and thereupon he comforted himself, going down into the body of the ship (where the day before that great assembly had bèn) but he found no man; and seeking further, he went into the chappel, where he espied Sergil his squire fast sleeping, and hard by him two old men with rolls on their heads, apparelled like Turks: with that he went to Sergil, and with his foot gave him such a thrust, that on a sudden he started up, and speaking to his master (as though he had never seen him before) asked him what he meant, whereat Esplandian began to laugh, and said unto him: God God, Sergil, hast thou bèn in my company all thy life time, and knowest me no better? and taking him by the hand, he drew him in such manner to him that therewith he awaked, much ashamed to have committed such a fault: whereof seeking to excuse himself, he said unto his master, By my faith sir, I was so fast asleep when you called me, that I neither remembered you nor my self, and I am now more abashed then I was before to think how I fell into so found a sleep: That cannot I tell (answered Esplandian) although as much hath happened unto me. Then he told him that he had slept, and when he awaked he found himself alone betwèn the wings of the Serpent, without any of the company that were with him when he received the order of Knighthood, and now (said he) we are arrived at the foot of the highest rock that ever I saw, and withal it is so hard and difficult to climb up, that I can finde neither path nor way how to do it, yet have I beheld it long, but (as I perceive) it is enbirened with the Sea in such manner, that consid'rin the scituation of the place, I certainly believe it is the Rock of the Enchauntress, whereof in times past thou hast heard by Amadis my father. And as they were in this manner speaking, Sergil heard the two old men snort (that as yet they had not once perceived) and demanded of Esplandian if he knew them not: As God help me no (said Esplandian for as far as I remember I never saw them before, but I judge that Urganda hath left them here to help us if we need. I pray you said Sergil let us awake them: then he called them so loud that they rose up, Esplandian asking them who brought them thither,

but

but they made signs that they could not speak. It was then about twelve of the clock, and Esplandian would willingly have eaten if he had found meat, and said unto Sergil, Friend, neber in all my life had I so good an appetite to eat as I have now, but I doubt we shall find no victuals in the ship, I pray the Sergil let us go see, for as I perceive, if we trust unto these dumb men, we are like to fare but hardly: but the dumb men perceived well what he meant: wherefore going out of the chappel they entred into a chamber that joined to the hall, from whence they presently returned, bringing with them such quantity of meat that Esplandian and Sergil were neber better satisfied in all their lives: having dyned and the tables uncobered, they went into the place where Esplandian had slept, from whence he shewed Sergil the rock whereof he had told him before, saying: Assure thy self Sergil, seeing the serpent stirreth not from hence, it is a sign that I must go upon this high rock to see if there be any adventures, and if I can bring them to an end. I know not (answered Sergil) what you will do, but if you trust to the counsel of our dumb men we shall stay long enough here before we have any words of them. Let us land (said Esplandian) and with that he made signs to the old men, that they should hoise out the boat, whereunto they willingly obeyed: which done, the first that entred was Sergil, then Esplandian (armed in the same armour he ware when the great Balan dubbed him knight) and rowing with their oares they made towards the rock, at the foot whereof they descended out of the boat, leaving the two dumb men alone in the serpent, and as they were looking for a way to get up, they found the same path that Amadis and Granfador had taken when they went up to see the strange adventures that the Enchaunteress had left there, and they had not travelled long, but that Sergil perceived his master to want a sword, (for of all other armour he was wel furnished when he received the order of Knighthood onely of a sword) wherefore he said unto him: Sir, I know not whither you mean to go, but if we pass forward, and that upon the top of this rock, if you find any dangerous adventure, you have nothing to defend your self withal, but if you will believe me, you shall rather take an oar out of our boat, for oftentimes the stoutest

man is ouercome, not for want of courage or stomack to resist, but for want of weapons to defend himself, and with that he went back unto the boat, and bringing one of the oares with him, gaue it to his master, in which manner they began to mount upon the Rock not without great pain, the way being so difficult, the air hot, and Esplandian heavily armed. Notwithstanding they ceased not to trauail day and night, till they arriued at the Hermitage, where the image of brass stood with a scrole of writing at his fæt (as you haue read in the fourth book) which as then they could not discern by reason it was dark, wherefore they determined to pass the night under the gate, not entering any further, for it was extream hot. Then Esplandian put off his Helmet, and laying down his Shield, eat such meat as his Squire had brought with him: which done, lying down upon the grass he slept till the morning that he and Sergil entered into the chappel, where they beheld the image and the writing, but neither of them could read it because the letters were in Greek, which they understood not. Then Esplandian determining to go further, said to Sergil, Friend, it is best for you to stay here till I come again, for if this be the rock where my father and Grandador (whether it were by fortune or willingly) did once arriue, I remember I haue heard them tell, that in Summer the air is so hot therein that it breedeth many venomous beasts, whereby thou mightest receiue some harm, being no better armed then thou art, but as for me thou knowest I am predestined to those adventures that other men haue failed to accomplish, which putteth me in hope either that I shall not liue long, or I shal accomplish the things that are foreshewed of me, and by that means shall conquer the sword and the treasure, that for certain is said to be in an old palace within this Rock. What, said Sergil, Do you think that although I should die a thousand deaths I would refuse to go with you? No by my faith, for I know that without your company life wil be irksomer to me then a thousand deaths if a man could endure so many. Friend, answered Esplandian, I believe it well, nevertheless if any inconvenience should happen unto thee, besides the blame I might receiue thereby, thy deed would be more esteemed folly, then done of any courage: but not

to

to me that habe both armour and ſhield to fight againſt the ſtrongeſt enemy that may be found, wherefore I pray thée once again do as I would habe thée. Wherewith Sergil perceiving noremedy, turned his head aſide and began to weep. In the meantime Eſplandian laced on his Helmet, and hanging his Shield about his neck with the oar on his ſhoulder, kept on the pathes that at the laſt brought him to the top of the rock, and being there he went toward the broken Caſtle, where he perceibed the other Image with the table that ſhe held in her left hand, the contents whereof he could no more underſtand then that of the Hermitage, wherefore without longer ſtaying he paſſed forward towards the chamber where the treaſure lay, being continually guarded by a moſt great and horrible Serpent: and as he went nérer to it, he perceibed the gates to be of hard ſtone, where there was a ſword ſo far thruſt in, that nothing but the handle could be ſéen, therewith he thought it to be the ſame whereof he had heard, and being mobed with great deſire to habe it, he determined (although he had but a ſtaff to defend himſelf) to aſſaile the beaſt, whatſoeber happened thereby. And to the ſame end with a bold courage he ſet forwards, but the ſerpent (that as thé ſlept) awaked, and looking with a cruel countenance upon Eſplandian, began to hiſs, and caſt out fire at her mouth as if ſhe would deuour him. Neberthéleſs Eſplandian cobered with his ſhield went nér unto her, and with his oar gabe her ſuch a blow betwéen the ears, that with the force he uſed, it had almoſt fallen out of his hands. Notwithſtanding the beaſt made towards him ſo furiouſly that ſhe oberthrew him on the ground and trode upon his belly, whereat he was not a little abaſhed, but perceibed what danger he was in, ſuddenly ſtarted up, and by little and little got to the Gate wherein the Sword ſtuck, which at the laſt he laid hold upon, and with both hands drew it to him with ſuch force that he puld it out: and with that the gates opened with ſo fearful a noiſe, that preſently the ſerpent fell down upon the ground, and Eſplandian was ſo aſtoniſhed that he knew not what he did, but it was no marbel, for that Sergil that ſtayed in the hermitage far from thence was in the greateſt fear that eber he had. and beſides the ſaylers that as then ſayled along the coaſt, thought

verily the rock would have fallen into the Sea, so great was the noise at the opening of the gate. Mean time Esplandian lay in a swoun till midnight following that he opened his eyes, when he saw a great brightness in the plate, perceiving the serpent dead and the inchanted Sword lying by his side, which he took in his hand, and rising up entred into a chamber, in the middle whereof he saw a Tomb shining brighter then fire, and upon it a great lion of brass, holding in his right paw the scabberd of the sword, from whence the great brightness issued, and in his left a roll of letters written in Latine: The contents whereof do follow:

CHAP. II.

How *Esplandian* having read the Writing contained in the Roll that the Lyon held, took the shining Scabberd, and what speech he and *Sergil* had together.

THe fearful cries at the time of the great constraint, shall force thee (O thou Knight that hast conquered the Sword) to return again to conquer the great Treasure whereby thy joy shall be restored in such sort, that the kindled flames, by whose beams thou shalt far off be wounded, shall be extinguished, and content thy self with this glorious Conquest thou hast made, for that variable fortune hath advanced thee before all others, and thou hast obtained the honor whereunto so many good Knights could never attain, notwithstanding all their prowes.

Esplandian having read and again perused the Contents of the writing, for a time stood musing thereon, and in the end perceived thereby, that although he had brought the Adventure of the Sword unto an end, yet he should be constrained to attend the time appointed (according to the Contents of the Writing) nevertheless he knew not the meaning thereof, being as then at liberty and free from all passions of love. Notwithstanding the cruel tyrant Love afterward obtained so great a Conquest against him, that he made him fall in love with her that he never had seen, nor never was in her company, as reading further in this History you shall at large perceive. Then he laid hand upon the scabberd, and put the Sword in it, thanking God devout-

ly

ly for the grace he had obtained. After that he went divers times about the Tomb to see if he could open it without breaking, but he perceived the christal, from whence issued part of the brightnes to be covered with another plate coloured like azure, so wonderfully wrought, that it would scarce be judged whether it were marble, mettal, or any other stuff: whereupon he left off his enterprize, and returned into the hall where the dead Serpent lay, but as then neither the Sword nor the Scabberd yielded any such brightnes as before they did, because it was day: Then going out he went down again towards the Hermitage where he had left his Squire, who being melancholly and amazed at the long absence of his master, (fearing some danger happened unto him was gone out of the Hermitage to seek him, and he had not trabelled far, but he perceived him coming with the sword by his side, whereat he made such joy, that being yet far from him, he cryed out and said; O my lord, blessed be God that hath given you so good a beginning whereat every man shall wonder. Friend (said Esplandian) he hath yet done more for me then thou wouldest think, and with that he began from point to point to shew him the danger wherein he was, and being in that discourse, it waxed dark even then when they arrived at the Hermitage: wherefore they determined not to trabel any further that night, but layed them down under the next trees they came unto, still speaking of the strangeness of the place: whereat Sergil being more abashed then before, could not refrain to say: As God help me Master, by good reason you may be esteemed a better Knight then Amadis your father, that came into this place, and saw the Image at the Hermitage, the writing that standeth upon the Arch of stone, the Serpent, the Sword that stuck in the gate where you found it, and the shining Tomb, yet durst he never prove any of these adventures: and he said true, for Amadis knew well by the Contents of the Letters written in Greek, that these adventures were ordained for his Son Esplandian, and therefore undertook them not, but all others, onely Granfador and Urganda knew it not till then: but although Sergil thought to please his Master using such words in his commendation, yet Esplandian took it not so well, saying: I

pray

pray thée Sergil never use such spéeches, for if the prowess and knightly adventures of my Father had bén as well employed to the advancing of the Christian faith as they were to win and obtain honor in this world, I think his like would not be found, but having passed his youth in things so vain and transitory, doubtless his glory is the less, not that I presume in any thing to accuse him, and God forbid I should, yet is he known in so many places to be so valiant a Knight, that whosoever he be can second him may well estéem himself happy among the happiest, wherefore I pray thée let us talk of other matters. Thus sometimes talking and other whiles sléeping, day began to appear, when they rose up, taking their way towards the Sea-side, descending down the Rock, till they came where the two dumb men stayed for them, one within the ship, the other in a little bark, wherein Esplandian entred, according to the sign the dumb man had made, and Sergil went into the Serpent, and with that they departed, and the bark sailed so swiftly, that in short space they left the sight one of the other. But we will leave Sergil with his dumb man, making extream sorrow to sée himself bereaved of his Masters presence, and will shew you of Esplandian that from this time forwards shall be called the Black Knight, by reason of the arms he bare, who being in the little bark with his conducter, sailed so long that they took landing nér the Port where King Lisuart lay prisoner.

CHAP. III.

How the bark wherein the black Knight and the dumb man sailed, arrived in the borders of Turky hard by the place called *The defended Mountain*, and of the discourse that an hermite and the Knight had together.

TEn days and as many nights together the Black Knight and the dumb man sailed on the Sea, not knowing in what parts they were, for if he had enquired of his guide, it had bén but labor lost: the eleventh day they discovered a great and pleasand Island, where the Knight being wearied with the impetuosity of the waves, desired his guide to put his bark on shoar, but

but he regarding not his wordes, thrust it nær unto a high Rock, by nature cut in such manner, that it seemed a wall purposely made for the defence thereof: and the country was so full of woods and bushes, that it might be estéemed unhabitable. Then the dumb man shewed him a path that led him up to the Rock, and made him a sign to go thither, wherewith he issued out of the Barque, armed at all points, and began to mount up, the weather was then extream hot, whereby the Knight was so chased in his harnes, that he was constrained to put off his Helmet and carry it in his hand, till he perceived a little Hermitage among the bushes, and before it stood a high cross, which pleased him well, not onely for the hope he had to finde some one of whom he might enquire in what country he was, but because he was assured that there dwelt a Christian, and with that he perceived a man apparelled like an Hermit, so old and withered that his long white beard hung down to his girdle, carrying in his hand a pitcher of water, that he had drawn out of a fountain not far from thence, and was passing by when the Knight spake unto him, saying: Father, God save you, which when the good man heard, he was in so great amase, that for fear his pitcher fell out of his hand and brake in pieces. Nevertheles by little and little he came to himself again, and perceiving him that spake unto him, answered and said, My Son, it is now twenty years past sithence I left the pleasures of this world, and forsook my native soyl to obtain the grace of God, and that which most abasheth me is, that since the time whereof I speak I never found man that as yet saluted me in this manner, and I think verily you are a stranger in these countries, or else your spéech and apparel disguiseth you much. Father (said the Knight) true it is I am a stranger, brought hither by such means, that I neither know the country where I am, nor any man or woman inhabiting therein, for you are the first creature that I met since I arrived here, of whom I might enquire, assuring you that when I perceived this cross it rejoyced my heart, for it is the arms of the Master that I serve. What? saied the Hermit, do you then know the vertue thereof? I, answered the Knight, that I do, being well assured that upon the like cross our Redéemer (whereof

I speak) suffered death and passion. Alas said the holy man, you say true, praised be his holy name, that once before I die hath given me the grace to let me see a man of this side the Sea that believeth in him, assuring you sir Knight that you and I are onely the two creatures in this country that are christians, for all the rest are Pagans and Idolaters. And as he would have proceeded further, his speech failed him, doubting ẏ he to whom he spake, was but a fantaste or shadow of a man, but at the last he waxt bolder, & in manner of conjuration asked him if he were a mortal man or not? Mortal (answered the Knight) that I am for certain, and withal a sinner, which displeaseth me much, and if it abasheth you at this present to see me here, I am my self no less abashed to see you: for without doubt the manner of my arrival in this country hath been such and so strange, that I can render you no reason thereof, but if you know the country wherein we are, I beseech you good Father, tell it me to put me out of doubt. Gladly, (said the Hermit) and with that he took him by the hand, and led him to his Hermitage, and there sitting down together upon a log of wood, the old man began to speak in this manner, and said, Now sir Knight, tell me I pray you what country man you are. Father (said he) Great Britain is the country where in my youth I was born & bred, I know not if ever you were acquainted therewith: How long is it said the Hermit, since you came from thence? It is fifteen days and more since I was there said the Knight: Did you never know King Lisuart (said the Hermit) that in my time raigned therein? Yes truly (said the Knight) for I have seen him many times: how did he when you came from thence said the Hermit? That can I not certainly shew said the Knight, for he was lost and led away from thence, but by whom or in what manner no man can tell, notwithstanding the great pain and diligence divers of his Knights have used to finde him out. When the Hermit heard that, he seemed very pensive, which the Knight perceiving, thought in his mind that he could tell him some news, whereupon he began to behold him well in the face to see if he changed colour, with that the Hermit (that well perceived the Knights meaning) said unto him. Truly Sir Knight, not without cause have I enquired so much touching King Lisuart, but before I will shew you my reason why,

you shall understand that I am of great Britain as well as you, where as yet the greatest part of my kindred are living, whom I forsook at the same time that a Giant Lord of this country married with a Lady who as then I served, and with her passed the Sea, not onely hoping to reap some reward of my former service, but (as yong men are moved) with a great desire to see strange countries, but it fortuned, that my Mistris being forsaken of God, as soon as she arrived in this country, left his holy law to receive the law of her husband, wherefore considering with my self, that by reason as well of my natural weakness, as by often frequenting the company of these country men I might fall into some error, I determined to withdraw my self into this place, wherein I have endured much pain & misery, to the great danger of my life, by reason of the controversie between the law of Jesus Christ, which I hold, and the law of the Pagans that seek daily to destroy it, that without the favor of my mistris that would not suffer them to displease me, I had not lived so long as I have done among them, but when it pleaseth God I wil depart hence, and return again into mine own country, now you have heard how I have hitherto lived, I pray you sir Knight (said he) shew me your adventures, and who hath brought you into this place from whence very hardly you will ever be able to return again, but rather are in danger of most cruel death, or to indure the most horrible imprisonment that ever was heard of, which would grief me much, not onely for the great beauty and young years that I perceive to be in you, but for that you are my native countryman. Father answered the Knight, you have done me great pleasure to shew me the manner of your life and bringing up, nevertheless before I satisfie your request, tell me (if it pleaseth you) wherefore when you spake of King Lisuart you seemed so sad, which made me conjecture that you know something touching him. Son (said the Hermit) you shall understand that a daughter of mine, servant to the Lady whereof I spake, not long since came hither to see me, and told me that her mistris returning from great Britain, whither she went to deliver a brother of hers out of prison, brought with her very secretly a Knight of great estimation as she said, nevertheless I cannot assure you who it is: but as I have learned since, they say the two

Giants ſons were much pleaſed therewith, which maketh me doubt, conſidering the news you have ſhewed me touching King Luiſart, that he is moſt likely to be the man, for ſhe is ſo well ſeen in the art of Nigromancy and Magick, that oftentimes ſhe procureth miſchief unto thoſe that never offended her. And in what country are we now (ſaid the Knight?) You are between the Marches of Turky and Greece ſaid the Hermit, for this mountain parteth both the countries, but it is ſo ſtrong, not onely by nature, but by art, that neither of the two Princes of thoſe countries, what force ſoever they brought hither, could never win it. And now a Giant (ſon unto my Lady and miſtriſs) and one of the moſt ſtrongeſt and puiſſant Knights in the Eaſt parts, (as many of his neighbors, whoſe goods he hath by force uſurped, and that in deſpight of the Emperor, or any other contradicting the ſame have proved) is Lord thereof. Where dwelleth he (ſaid the Knight?) Above upon the Rock (ſaid the Hermit) in a Caſtle which he hath moſt ſtrongly fortified, and is kept with all diligence and care by a Giant one of his brethren, with others, of as good condition as themſelves, and which is more, it is not poſsible to come neer ſ Caſtle, but by a little pathway whereon the Sea continually beateth, at the end whereof there is a pair of ſtairs cut out of ſ Rock, whereby you mount up till you come to an Iron-gate, where a villain, in whom the Lord of the Caſtle putteth his truſt, watcheth continually, for there is no other enterance, but onely the great gate that is defended with ſtrong Platforms and great Towers, in the middle whereof there is a door ſo ſtraight, that a man on horſeback can hardly enter therein, and that way moſt commonly thoſe of the Caſtle do iſſue forth. Before it be night, ſaid the Knight, I mean to ſee what manner of place it is, and if I can I will know who it is, that was ſo lately brought thither. God keep you from thence (ſaid the Hermit) for thereby you will either procure your own death, or at the leaſt perpetual impriſonment. Happen what may (ſaid the Knight) I will prove what fortune it ſhall pleaſe God to ſend me. That were but ill done of you (ſaid the Hermit) for that men are bound to imploy their forces onely in things that ſtand for reaſon and poſsibility, thereby to reap a benefit by their

labors,

labors, otherwise they are to be esteemed desperate fools, and not baliant and hardy Knights adventuring (without due respect) not onely their bodies, but their souls which are of greater price, and Christ himself hath by example plainly shewed it unto us, for when the debil came and tempted him, bidding him do certain things, which indeed (as he was Christ) were possible, but as he was man were impossible to do, he answered him that he should not tempt the Lord his God. So my good Son (said he) I would advise you to desist from so unreasonable an enterprise. You may preach what you will to perswade me to the contrary (said the Knight) but I must do that whereunto I am called, which is to prove my self in those adventures that in mans judgement seem impossible: otherwise those y have foreshewed of me, should not onely have travelled in vain, but be esteemed liars and fools. If then these sayings be true, what greater honor can I obtain then bringing most wonderful adventures to an end, I may from henceforth thereby restrain the rage and fury of such men as hurt, and do injury unto others, contrary to the Laws of God and man: And if they be found liars, I had rather they should be reproved for their want of knowledge, then I accused of any point of cowardise. And if the worst fall out, I will imploy my force against such accursed people, (members and ministers of the debil) whom by the help of God I shall overcome: and I beliebe and am certainly perswaded (that if I die in those adventures) he will receibe my soul into his heavenly joy. The Hermit marbelled much to hear the Black Knight speak so wisely, and with so great a courage, nebertheless the great beauty and yong years he perceibed him to habe, moved him to so great compassion, y the tears ran down his eyes, and therewith he said, Ha good Knight, he in whom thou trustest, preserbe thee and send thee long life, and seeing thou art resolutely determined to pass forward, I pray thee defer the time for this night, for it is already so late, that although thou shouldest habe time enough to get unto the gate before the Sun goeth down, yet shalt thou finde it shut as it is accustomed to be, whereupon the Knight kept the Hermit company till the next day in the morning.

CHAP.

CHAP. IIII.

How the black Knight went up the Rock, where by force of Arms he slew three Giants, and delivered King *Luisart* out of prison.

AT the Hermits request the Knight stayed and bare him company all night, who entertained him in the best manner he could, where after they had supped, they layed them down upon a little straw till day began to appear, when they rose up, and the Knight having said his prayers in the Chappel, being Armed at all points, took his leave of the Hermit, that brought him a great part of his way, and had gone further but he feared the Giants. Wherefore committing him to God, he took his leave and returned. Being gone, the Knight travelled so fast, that having coasted along the Sea-shore, and passed the side of a great and thick forrest, he descended into the goodliest meddow that ever was seen, from whence he perceived the Castle, scituated upon the top of a high Rock, and making towards it, he came to a long bridge, finding no other way unto it, at the end whereof was a broad causte paved with stone, and the Sea beating continually against the Towers, out of the windows he espyed two Knights, one as he thought was a Giant, the Ladies Son. Notwithstanding he stayed not, but took his way on the left hand, and mounting up the steps, came to a Marble-gate kept by a Knight all armed, that before he came to him cryed as loud as he could, saying, Thou accursed wretch, the colour of thy armor foreshoweth not so much sorrow and grief as here thou shalt receive confusion. What devil was he that sent thée hither being so young? Mean time the Knight by little and little got up the Hill, making as if he heard him not, for he had work enough to look to himself, the way was strait and uneasie to pass, and therefore he bare his Helmet under his arm. But when he approached the Gate, and heard the other continue in his bravery, he answered him and said, He that is afraid commonly threatneth a far off, as thou doest me, but if thou desirest to know the cause of my coming, open me the Gate, and thou shalt see if I can satisfie thy desire. With that the

Porter

Porter came down, and (while the Knight put on his Helmet) he opened the Gate, and looking out cryed with a loud voice, come in unhappy creature to the place where yet never any stranger had good entertainment. Then the black knight went in, and entred into a vault, mean time the gate was shut whereby the place seemed very dark, for there entred no light but onely by a little hole that came through the Rock, and as he passed forward, the Porter that was behind, staying him, said unto him, Villain, leave thy armor here, and I will bring thee where the Lords of the Castle shall reward thee according to thy deserts. It were better (said the knight) without so much trouble to bring me thither e'n as I am, and I will follow thee. But I will not (said he) lest I lose too much by thee, for then my companion will have thy Armor, which by right is mine, and with that he lifted up his hatchet, thinking to cleave his head, whereat the black knight stept back, and with his Sword gave him such a blow, that he overthrew him on the ground, and stepping upon him, thrust him into the body, and as he had done, there entered at the Gate (that went out of the vault) a villain all armed, who thinking to speak to the Porter, with a rude and churlish voice, said, Argantes, why stayest thou so long to bring up that accursed wretch that even now entred at the Gate? Be content a while (said the black Knight) I will be there soon enough both for thee and those that sent thee, if the Gates be open. With that the villain perceived himself to be deceived, for he espyed Argantes dead upon the ground, wherefore without longer staying he turned his back, and pulled the door after him, left the knight shut into the vault, whereat he was abashed, fearing to be famished for want of meat, but it fell out otherwise, for not long after he saw the gate opened, whereat there entred a Giant armed all in green, who perceiving the party dead, and the Knight that had slain him standing by him, was in such a rage, that he said unto him, Thou cursed wretch, I am much abashed how thou hast thus intangled thy self within this place, from whence while thou livest thou shalt never be able to escape, but when thou hast indured a long and most hard imprisonment, shalt be constrained to end thy miserable days with a thousand cruel torments that are prepared for thee. Art thou at that point (said the Knight) I hope rather before we depart to make thee bear this villain com-

pany,

pany, that at my entring spared not to threaten me as thou deest now. What (said the Giant?) I assure thee I loved this dead Knight as well as I love my self, and now I finde him in this manner slain before mine eyes, yet art thou not afraid to boast thereof: By my head (said he) thou shalt dearly buy it. Behold I pray thee, answered the Knight, how thy unhappy fortune followeth thee at once, here before thy face thou seest thy friend dead, and by the same means thou shalt likewise loose the soul out of thy body, which the debil hath waited for since thou first beganst to lead an evil life. That shall soon be seen (said the Giant) and with that they encountered, and at their meeting laid upon each other so fiercely, that with the noise they made, it seemed ten Knights fighting together: and so long they continued the Combate, that in the end the Giant waxed faint, which he perceiving, having lost the greatest part of his Shield, and in a manner all his blood, he began to flie, and the black Knight after him so fast, that before he could get out of the bault with one blow that clave his Head to the teeth, he slew him in the place. And as the Knight stepped forth, he met two Squires that came to see the Combate, who perceiving the Knight with his Sword bloody in his hand, asked him what was become of their guard. I have dealt with them (said he) as it hath pleased God to dispose: And how is that? (said they) To send them both (said the Knight) an unhappy end of their wretched lives, that their souls might be tormented in the everlasting pains of hell. With that they looked in and perceived Argantes on the one side, and the Giant on the other as yet shaking their legs with the pangs of death: whereat they had so great fear, that in great haste they presently retired, crying with a loud voice, Come forth my Lords, come forth, for your Uncle and the Porter are both slain, wherewith at the gate of the dungeon there appeared another Giant unarmed, very young and of a huge stature, named Frerion, who perceiving the black Knight marching so boldly towards him, held the door half shut, and with a loud voice spake unto him and said, By my Fathers soul thou must surely be some debil disguised in humane shape, otherwise it had been impossible for thee to have slain two of the best Knights

in

in the world, and in despight of them to enter thus far within the Castle, but of one thing am I well assured, that what pain or torment soeber I shall cause thée to indure, I cannot be revenged of the least wrong and injury I have received at thy hands. Thou brutish & unreasonable beast (said the Knight) thou art surely worse then he of whom thou speakest, for that he being already judged of God, hath neither mean to repent his wickedness, nor hope of salvation, but thou to whom it hath pleased God to give sence and reason to know both good and evil, dost still persevere in thy wickedness, making of vice a vertue, in such manner that by good right I may better tearm thee a devil then those that are wearied and wax melancholly to have so long attended for thy accursed soul, which I will shortly send them if thou come forth into this court, or let me enter in. Then stay (said Frerion) and thou shalt sée how I will teach thée to preach in other sort, and with that he shut the dore and went in to arm him, mean time the black Knight sat down upon a marble stone, and he had not rested long, but the Giant came again, who bringing a great Cimiter upon his shoulder, would have issued at the gate, when the Knight spake unto him, saying. Stay a little I pray thée before thou comest forth, and grant me one request which in right thou canst not well deny me, for although neither courtesie nor any part thereof did ever lodge within thy breast, that habit of Knighthood wherewith thou art invested, ought more to move thée to humanity then thy nature of it self affordeth. Ask what thou wilt (said the Giant) and it may be thou shalt be refused. Both thou & I (said the Knight) are now on foot, I pray thée then let us fight in the other Court, that those of thy Castle may behold the pastime: which he said to the end that if he overcame his enemies as he doubted not thereof, they should not shut him out. By my head (said the Giant) at the first I thought thou wouldest have asked mercy at my hands, which would not much avail thée: but séeing thy request is no other, I am content to grant it, although a means to flie away were (much more advantage unto thée which these high walls will not permit thee, if thou be once inclosed within them: Thou speakest said the black Knight) as thy nature yieldeth, and I as vertue

bindeth me, for the reſt let God work his will. Come in then (ſaid Frerion) and defend thy ſelf from me if thou canſt. With that the black Knight entred into a fair court paved with white Marble, all galleried about and ſupported with Pillars of Porphire, in the middeſt whereof ſtood the portal that entered into the houſe, where an old Lady accompanied of divers yong gentlewomen ſtood looking forth, to whom the Giant went, and kneeling on his knee, ſaid unto her: Madam, I moſt humbly beſeech you, that neither for good nor evil which may happen unto me in fighting with this Knight, not one of your houſe be ſo bold to help or favor me in any ſort, for I my ſelf will put him to death with this my trenchant blade, and riſing up again holding his Shield before him with his Cimiterre in his hand, he marched towards his enemy, who having God on his ſide (to whom he recommended himſelf) ſtood ready to receive him. Then there began ſuch a Combate betwéen them, that their blows ſéemed two Smiths forging upon their Anvils, ſeeming like fire that the wind kindled in the air, and ſurely the black Knight had ſped but hardly at that time had it not been for the Armor Urganda gave him, that could not be cut by any weapon, and for the good Sword he conquered in the Rock of the Enchantreſs, wherewith he ſtroke not one blow, but he drew blood on the Giant Frerion, who nevertheleſs did marvellouſly both defend himſelf and aſſayl his enemy, but by evil fortune as he thought to ſtrike the Knight on the right arm, he ſtarted back, and ſtepping forwards again, gave the Giant ſuch a blow upon the Helmet that he cut away a great piece thereof, together with the buckle that made it faſt, but although the blow was marvellous great, and in a manner incredible, yet was not the Giant any thing therewith abaſhed, but ſtill ſhewed himſelf as freſh as if he had not fought all the day long: Nevertheleſs the blood in ſuch abundance iſſued out of his body, that the white pavement of the Court was changed into red, and therewith he grew ſo weak, that it might eaſily be judged he had the worſt, whereby he ſtill began to rebile, ſeeking onely to defend himſelf from his enemies blows, whereat the old Lady that beheld them, conſidering her Sons extreamity, cryed out and ſaid, Alas my childe, is it poſsible

I should see thee murthered before my face, and therewith in great hast she ran thither, thinking to part them, but it was too late, for as she began to go towards them, the Giant fell dead on the ground with two blows that the black Knight gave him, one upon the head where he was unarmed, the other right in the middle of his leg, wherewith he cut it from his body, whereat the old Lady was so grieved that she swooned in the place, being by her Gentlewomen carryed from thence into her Chamber, where they layed her on a bed, cursing him that was the cause thereof, nevertheless he followed them to the chamber door, where the old woman (being revived) perceiving him to enter, began again to lament and mourn, and shedding great abundance of tears, she said unto him: Alas thou cruel knight, the onely bereaver of all my joy and felicity, art thou not satisfied yet? But wilt thou likewise have my life and my Sons both? Then I pray thee with speed either execute thy will or else depart from hence, and take what thou thinkest good, permitting me to live the rest of my miserable days in sorrow and care, with these poor women: but all her intent was to make him enter into the chamber, which was so inchanted, that no man could pass the threshold of the door, but presently he lost all his sences and fell down upon the ground, as if he were dead, but little did the inchantment avail her against the black knight, because the shining Sword had such a property in it, that no enchantment whatsoever could hurt the bearer thereof. Therefore the Knight hearing the sorrow the old Lady made, he went into the chamber, speaking courteously unto her, and said, Madam me thinks you should take the offence I have committed on your behalf, in much better part, considering such hazards are common unto Knights, desiring to win honor, and therefore I pray you appease your sorrow and shew me the Knight you brought hither out of great Britain. When the old Lady perceived him so far within the Chamber without let, and that he desired to see the King, she being as it were out of her wits, cryed as loud as she could, and said, alas unhappy wretch that I am, what have I done, for thinking to revenge another mans death, I have procured the destruction of mine own children, and therewith she

ſighed in ſuch manner as if her heart would burſt within her body, and lamenting the abſence of her other Son, ſaid: Alas Matroco, where art thou now? What happy fortune hath thus ſeparated thée from thy brother and me? Surely when thou heareſt of his death, and at thy return ſhalt finde another Lord of this caſtle, I am in doubt thou wilt not have the patience to put up ſo great an injury, but thinking to revenge thy ſelf I fear this devil will handle thée in the like ſort he hath done the reſt, for ſure he is no mortal man, for if he were he had found more reſiſtance in this place then he hath done. Then ſpeaking unto the Knight ſhe asked him if he knew the man ſhe held in priſon, I truly (ſaid he) it is King Liſuart, whereof I am right ſorry, being well aſſured that Kings elected of God, (as he is) for the government of his people, ought not to be uſed in that manner. Wherefore I would have you ſhew me where he is, otherwiſe, I will do worſe then I have hitherto done. I know not (ſaid ſhe) who thou art, nor by what means thou haſt ſo great power, but I am well aſſured and I would never have thought that twenty ſuch Knights (as once this day I did eſteem thée) could ever have attained to the atchieving of ſo great an enterprize, and much leſs to have withſtood my art as thou haſt done, ſo that conſidering thereof, I ſuppoſe ỳ this thy power proceédeth from him in whom in my young years I did once believe, and ſince that have forſaken him, to follow the works of the common enemy of all mankinde, who according to his natural inſtinction, hath juſtly rewarded me to my deſert: therefore it were but folly to deny thee any thing, that art ſo ſurely defended by him to whom all things are obedient. Follow me then (ſaid ſhe) and I will ſhew thee the king, but as I think, it is not he thou ſeekeſt. And with that ſhe roſe up and went into a dark chamber, the knight following her: then ſhe opened an Iron-gate, and ſaid unto him go in, and there ſhalt thou find the priſoner. Lady (ſaid the knight) if it were to fight I would not fail to do your commandment, but if by ſubtilty I ſhould be ſhut in priſon, you would laugh at me that I had no more wit but to put my truſt in you, wherefore go you in firſt, that whatſoever happeneth, you may have your part, I ſee well (ſaid the Lady) that my labor is in vain, and all my art is nothing

thing in respect of thee, therefore I am content to do thy will, but we have no light to see. Care you not for that (said he) for I will provide you light, and with that he pulled of the taffata that covered the scabberd of his Sword, whereby there was so great a brightness in the place, as if the Sun had shone therein. Then they descended into a Cave, where the Knight perceived King Lisuart lie upon a couch of straw, with a great collar of Iron about his neck, and fetters on his legs, whereby he indured no little pain, whereat he was so grieved, that for sorrow the tears ran down his eyes, yet would he not disclose himself unto him, neither once utter what he thought, but without making himself known, said unto him Noble King, you have been overlong within this filthy place, rise up I pray you and follow me. When the King heard him speak in that manner, he made no other account but to end his days at that time, wherewith he could not refrain to weep, and speaking unto the old Lady, asked her if she knew him: For (said he) since I entred into this place, I never saw any Knight nor any one that spake unto me, but that little sustenance I had was let down at a hole from the top of this dungeon. Then she answered him, and in great despite said, Thou accursed King, if I had not known thee, I would never have taken pains to fetch thee so far, from hence as I have done, cursed be the time when first I took it upon me, for thou onely art the cause of my great sorrow, and the sole instrument of my bereaved joys. In faith Lady (said the King) I know not what you mean, & am very sorry for your heavines, for I never sought but to do honor and pleasure unto all Ladies and Gentlewomen that desired the same, and for them have I oftentimes enterprised many dangerous adventures, to the great peril and hazard of my life, and if it hath happened otherwise unto you, it is altogether unknown to me and wholly against my will, wherefore I beseech you be not offended with me, but tell me where I am, and in whose power I now remain a prisoner in so great misery, for by my soul I know it not, neither can I so much as conceive which way I came into this place; onely I remember that to succour a Gentlewoman that a villain would have forced, I entered into a tent, but what happened unto me after that I know not.

not, but that now I finde my self lying on straw like a thief with Irons on my legs. King (said she) the short time of thy continuance in this darkness hath not satisfied (as I well hoped it would) the great mischief I do wish thée, and that for good cause, seeing that by thée onely I have indured so much sorrow, that if the heart and bowels were taken out of my body they would be found as burning hot, as flaming fire, and especially for the new displeasure I have now conceived to sée thée so soon delivered out of my hands, being in good hope by thy long imprisonment to satisfie my losses past: but yet I am deceived, for that fortune hath now made me pay the usury of my forepassed joys, having given thée into my hands, from whence by the exquisite force of this devil incarnate (thou art now delivered) who having put to death the Guardians of this Castle and slain mine own Son, hath constrained me to bring him unto thée, which I never thought he could have done, much less that ever I should have yielded unto his request, knowing the wrath of a woman not to have any bridle, or means of mittigation until her desired revenge, hath wrought the effect: and so had it happened unto thée without the force of this my enemy, but in despight both of him and thée with mine own hands I will slay my self, if my accursed fortune bereave me not the sooner of my wretched days: Cursed be both thou and thy King, thou now hast found (said she unto the Knight,) Now take him and do thy pleasure with him. I pray you then Lady (said he) unlose his Irons, and help me to lead him up, with that she took the keys out of her pocket, and opened the locks of his chains, whereby the King rose up upon his feet, and embracing the Knight, said unto him, What great good or pleasure sir Knight did I ever do you, whereby you should purchase this liberty unto me? By my soul I swear, that besides the honor you have obtained in this place, you have so much bound me unto you, that during my life I shall never forget your courtesie, wherefore if you love me let me know your name. Noble King (said the Knight) whosoever I am, I account my self happy if in any sort I may be able to do you service, as for the rest pardon me if it pleaseth you, and let us go out of this Cave, thanking God, that oftentimes sendeth

scourges

scourges unto those he loveth, as in his heavenly wisdom he thinketh convenient, thereby to keep them in obedience unto him. The King perceiving well by the Knights words that he desired not to be known, and for the same cause kept his Helmit on his head, therefore he determined not to move him any more, but with that they went all three out of the Cave, and came into a goodly hall, when the Sun began to go down.

CHAP. V.

How that after King *Luisart* was delivered out of prison, *Matroco* (*Frerions* elder brother) with his Ships, arrived at the foot of the Rock called *The Defended Rock*, and of the Battel between the said *Matroco* and the black Knight.

KIng Luisart, the black Knight, and the Lady being entred into the hall, as they looked out at the windows into the Sea, there entred a Gentlewoman, and doing reverence unto the Lady, she said, Madam, your Son Matroco with his Ships is even now arrived at the foot of the Rock, and with him great numbers of other vessels, that he hath taken upon the Seas, What is your pleasure to say unto him? When the Lady heard her she waxed pale, and with tears in her eyes, answered her and said, I would to God he were as far from hence as he is nèr: for my heart giveth me he will spèd in the like manner that others have done before him. And as she spake, King Luisart and the Knight looked into the sea, and perceiving the Giants Flèt surging on the shoar out of wind and weather, among the which they knew Elizabeth Libee his nephew, and divers others that were bound in Chains, making great sorrow, but none of Matrocos men durst set foot on land, having already been advertised by some of the Castle, of the great misfortune happened therein, and for the same cause stayed so long without, till the Giant espyed at the windows the Knight and the King looking upon them, wherewith in a great rage he cryed unto the black Knight whom he perceived all armed, and said unto him: Thou accursed slave is it thou that so cowardly hath slain my uncle, my brother, and the porter of the Castle? When the Knight heard him

him, he answered him and said, I have done my endeavor to make thee know, that it belongeth not to such as thou art either to imprison Kings, or to molest and grieve so many men as continually thou doest. By all my Gods (said Matroco) fortune favoreth thee too much, when at my arrival I finde thee armed with the walls of this my Castle, for if I had thee here upon the shore, I would soon send thee flying into the Sea as I have done many other rash and bold fools like thy self, that hast enterprised without cause to inforce my Castle, but if I continue here ten years together, I will never depart hence till I have thee in my hands, then shalt thou know how I use to handle such as thou art. Stay a while (said the black Knight) there is much more difference between saying and doing, then there is distance of place between thée and me. Thy threatnings make me more assured, wherefore now I fear thée lesser then I did before, and that thou mayest well know it to be so, take thy choice, whether I shall come down to fight with thée, or thou come up to me. Then shalt thou plainly see to whom God will give the victory, either to thée that trustest in thy own strength, or to me, that trust onely in him. The greatest oxen and the fattest bulls are oftentimes brought unto the slaughter as well as lesser beasts. So thou great beast, I advise thée to remember thy former life before worse happen unto thée, forsaking thy accursed faith which thou now holdest, and with might maintainest, otherwise be thou assured the wrath of God will fall upon thée, as it hath already done upon thy friends. That shall be seen (said Matroco) and if thou hast the courage to stay for me, I assure thee thou wilt be glad to deny the villainous words thou now hast uttered. Therefore cause the gate to be opened, for seeing thou puttest me to my choice, I will come up to thee, were it into the dungeon, from whence thou hast delivered that villain standing by thee, and therewith leaving his company behind him, being all armed, he began to mount up the Rock, and went unto the Castle, but when he came to the Iron-gate, (which he found open, because the watch had left it and were gone) and saw Argantes lying dead, he was in a manner out of his wits, not so much for the prowess he knew to be in him, as that he had

had from his youth bin nourished and bred up in the Castle by the Giant his Father. Nevertheless he dissembled his grief, hoping to be rebenged at his pleasure, and going further, in another place he found the Giant armed all in green, dead and freshly bleeding, wherewith he was so moved, that he stayed and stood still, and casting forth a great sigh, began to cry out and said, alas Arcalaus my good Uncle, how nér doth the loss of thée go to my heart, whersoever it had happened, but especially being done within mine own Castle, wherein I thought long time to live and make merry with thee: Alas is fortune so cruel unto thée, that after so many trabels and dangerous adventures, with infinite perils, that in the flower of thy youth thou hast sustained, thou must in thine old years come and receive so cruel a death within my house, which I esteemed as an assured hold and defence, not onely for me, but for thee and the rest of our kindred and friends? O immortal Gods, what vengeance can I take upon the Traitor that hath so much offended me, seeing that to cause him to die each day a hundred times were nothing in respect of the mischief he hath done unto me? At the least if it were Amadis De Gaule, so much esteemed of all men or any of his two brethren, or all they three together, my grief would be somewhat eased by reason of the sorrows I would cause them to indure. But what? Now I am constrained to fight against one alone, who by reason considering the trabel he hath taken all this day, ought already to esteem himself obercome and banquished: What glory then can I obtain by winning victory against him? Truly as much as if I sought against a simple woman, being (as by nature she is) both weak and feeble, so be unworthy of my presence will be much prouder if I do but make a countenance to fight with him: nevertheless what blot soever may happen unto mine honor, of force he must die. In this manner did the Giant lament ober the body of Arcalaus his dead Uncle, not moving from thence, till at last he perceived the black Knight that stood to bear him, wherewith being somewhat ashamed he marched towards him, thinking without hinderance to enter into the dungeon, but he found the black Knight at the gate that boldly thrust him back, and said unto him, Thou brutish

and unreasonable beast, thinkest thou to enter in by force? Whereat the Giant all abashed, stayed without and said, Thou biddest me to come up, have I then done thee wrong to come at thy commandment? No (said the Knight) but beholding thy countenance, it seemeth thou wouldest enter by authority, and therewith stepping aside, he said: Now come in, and do what thou canst. When the old woman (with whom King Luisart talked) perceived them ready to fight, in great fear she ran out of the Hall, and fell down at her Sons feet, crying out and said, Alas Matroco, I pray thee, and by the duty a childe oweth unto the mother, I command thee not to enter into this Combate, for thou knowest well that of all thy brethren, thou art onely left alive, wherewith my heart is so grieved, that had it not been for the love I bear thee, thou hadst found me now at thy return in as pitiful estate as thou seest thy brother Frerion: neither is there any woman at this present living in the world, that ought (with better reason) to wish for death then I. Alas what fortune is this, that now again I must renew the sorrows, which both time and long patience (as I thought) had buried in oblivion? Alas miserable woman that I am, I onely have forged the weapon that hath given the wound, whereby at this present I receive this dammage, for upon y day of my husbands decease, thinking to revenge the grief that my soul sustained, I have to the contrary advanced mine own shame and utter ruine, justly receiving the reward that belongeth unto such, as refusing the better part, think to remedy one mischief by procuring a worse upon themselves. Madam (said the Giant) if at this present you have received great loss by the death of some of your friends, nevertheless you ought not to take it so offensively, seeing they have ended their days in honorable Combate, as becometh all worthy Knights such as they were. And as for me, think you that for fear of death I will refuse to do that whereunto by Knighthood I am bound? No, no: likewise what reason or what excuse should move me, being as I am both fresh and well disposed, to refuse the Combate alone against one simple Knight? I deny not Madam, but confess that affection causeth you to use these words, and shew the nature of a woman: but

you

you must conceibe and think with your self that I answer you as it becometh me, preferring mine honor before your tears, wherefore I beseech you suffer me to take the small vengeance I can upon the villain that hath so much offended me. Matroco (said the Knight) thou reckonest before thine host, I would not for al the gold in the world, lose such an occasion offered as I now have, both for mine honor and advantage. Beliebe me, that neither thy mothers tears, nor the duty thou owest unto her (as being her childe) can by any means prolong the end of thee or me, if without dissimulation thou dost not by oath promise and assure me to live in as good sort from this time forwards as in times past thou hast lived wickedly.. Wherefore it were better for thee to make me know by effect the Prowess thou vauntest thy self to have, and for me to let thee see the courtesie, which it may be thou shalt finde at my hands if I obercome thee. When the Lady perceived that her prayers could take no place, she left them, and the two Knights began to run one upon the other so brabely, and with such fury, that King Luisart beholding them, thought he never saw so cruel a battel, and the which abashed him more was, that he could not presume how or in what manner the black Knight had found him in so strange a place, and yet he knew him not: sometime he thought him to be Amadis, but when he remembred the love he bare unto the Lady Oriana that he had newly married, he was otherwise perswaded, and likewise he remembred very well the Combates he had seen Amadis De Gaule make at Windsore against Dardan le Superbe, and after that with Ardan Canile, wherein he used all his forces, yet were they not comparable to those of ỹ black Knights: who as then found himself as fresh and well disposed to fight as if he had not fought all the day before. Again when he thought it to be his nephew Esplandian, for that Urganda had foreshewed many wonderful things of him, he was soon disswaded from that opinion, by reason he left him with the Queen his Mother, not once seeking to receibe the order of Knighthood, and although that since his departure out of Britain he might have obtained that honor, yet did he esteem it impossible for Esplandian to do so valiantly at the first. Further, Urganda had always

prophesied of him that the first valiant acts he should atchieve, should be renowned and spoken of by his strange and fearful navigation in the great Serpent, wherein he should be imbarqued, and for ỹ black knight he knew he arrived there in a little Barque unfurnished, whereby he esteemed it unlikely to be his nephew Esplandian. But he thought he never had seen so baliant and and hardy a Knight, for the longer he fought, the more he wearied and labored Matroco. Nevertheless he continued fighting for the space of two hours together before it could be judged who should have the victory, but in the end the Giant feeling himself wounded in so many places (his armes altogether broken, and his shield half cloven in two) began to mistrust his own force. Wherefore stepping back he stayed his hand, and said: Knight I pray thee let us breath our selves a while, and hear what I will offer thee, which cannot be other then to thy honor and advantage. With that the Knight stood still, and Matroco began to speak, saying: I wonder (sir Knight) what moved thee to venture in this manner upon this Rock, wherein never any but thy self durst enterprise to come during my Fathers life, neither yet sithence that by his death I have been Lord thereof, and besides this thy enterprise, wherein thou hast done the thing that all others feared to do before thee, thou hast also slain three of my friends, whereof two of them as I think were the best Knights in their time living on the earth, whereby I have just cause to hate thee more then any man living. But when I call to minde that thou hast done therein like a baliant and hardy Knight, I have some reason to pardon thee, and to esteem thee for one of the baliantest Champions that ever I saw in all my life, although I have both proved and banquished many others longer practised in arms, and stronger then thy self. Wherefore if the onely cause of thy arrival in this place was to deliver the King that looketh on us, I am content thou take and lead him hence in safety, and for the same cause likewise I quit thee of the combate, upon condition that without longer sojourning here, thou shalt presently depart out of this castle that belongeth unto me. When the black Knight had heard him, he answered him and said, Giant, as far as I perceive thou esteemest

it,

ht a great enterpꝛiſe that I haue done to come hither and finde thee here within thy Caſtle, where by me thoſe that thou ſo much lamenteſt habe been ſlain, but if thou knoweſt the maſter that I ſerbe, to whom as duty bindeth me, I am obedient, thou ſhouldſt pꝛeſently perceibe and plainly ſee, this enterpꝛiſe by thee eſtæmed much, to be nothing in compariſon of that he is able to do and bꝛing to paſs, foꝛ that from him onely and none other pꝛocæ̃deth all whatſoeber I habe done, whereby of good right the glozy belongeth unto him: and to the contrary, you that are idolaters, ſerbe thoſe that are accuſtomed to rock, and lull you aſleep in all kind of bices, cruelties, outrages, theftes, murthers, and infinite other wickednes, which foꝛ a time do pꝛoſper with you, whereby you libe in honoꝛ, riches, and all woꝛldly pleaſures, and ſo are nuſled in all filthineſs, but ſurely, ſuch manner of life may well be compared to buildings erected upon the ſands, that cannot continue long, but are moſt ſure to habe an ebil end, eben then when they are eſteemed to be at the toꝑ of all their woꝛldly felicity: like as it happened unto Lucifer and his fellows, whereof it may be thou haſt heard ſpoken. Nebertheleſs if thou wilt acknowledge thy foꝛmer life, and of a wicked wꝛetch (as thou haſt always libed) become a bertuous Knight, and as thou haſt bæn moſt cruel and inhumane, become courteous and pitiful, foꝛſaking thy bain and fooliſh faith to beliebe in my God, who is the moſt true and mighty Loꝛd of all Loꝛds, I will not onely parden thæ the Combate whereof thou haſt the woꝛſt, but will leabe thæ thy caſtle fræ unto thy ſelf: & ſo wil be thy friend, upon condition nebertheleſs, that from hencefoꝛth both thou & I ſhall imploy our foꝛces to oberthꝛow and deſtroy all thoſe, that (as thy ſelf) do walk in darkneſs, from whence (if thou wilt beliebe me) thou ſhalt come out. This anſwer of the black Knight mobed the Giant in ſuch manner, that like a wilde Bear he began to fome at the mouth, and ſaid unto the Knight, Thou accurſed wꝛetch, and of all others the moſt bile, doeſt thou ſo little eſtæm my fꝛce that thou thinkeſt me already obercome and banquiſhed? And therewith he pulled away the pieces of his Shield that hung about his neck, and thꝛew them

on

on the ground, and taking his sword in both his hands, he struck at the black Knight, thinking to cleave his head, but he perceiving the stroke, stepped under the blow, and closed with the Giant, whereby the sword passing over his head, hit upon the pavement with so great force, that it brake in pieces, and therewith the pummel fell out of his hand, so that the two Knights being closed together, could not hurt one the other but with their fists or pummels of their swords, whereby the black Knight much griebed the Giant, before he could finde the means to recover the handle of his sword, but in the end he found means to unlose himself from the Knight, and as he recoiled back, shunning the fury of his enemy, the old woman seeing her son in so great danger, went between them, and weeping most bitterly, said unto the Knight: Alas Gentleman, if ever you came of woman, or have compassion of a poor widows estate, I beseech you for the honor of him in whom you believe, to pity my misery, and leaving me this onely son, content your self with the death of those, that most cruelly you have slain before my face. Lady (said the Knight) then cause him to ask mercy, and he shall finde it in me, otherwise you labor but in vain. To ask mercy of thee (said the Giant) I can never be dishonored thereby, knowing it by experience to be most true, that such power and strength as I I finde in thee, cometh not from thy self, but proceedeth and is onely caused by the favor of thy God, for without his help thou hadst no more been able to endure against me, than straw against the flaming fire, therefore it were great folly in me to fight both against God and man, but I had rather (perceiving my end to approach) ask him mercy and forgiveness, then believe any longer in those in whom I have hitherto put my trust, whereof I am right sorry, so that whether I fight, or fight not, or whether I live or die, I protest and make a vow from henceforth, never to worship other then Jesus Christ thy Lord and Master. Meanest thou as thou sayest (said the Knight?) I truly, answered Matroco, and therewith kneeling on the ground, and lifting both his eyes and hands unto heaven, he cryed out and said, Jesus the Son of the Virgin *Mary*, I most certainly believe thee to be the onely, infallible, true, and living God, and that all others whom

during

during my life I have worſhipped and adored, are of no power, wherefore forſaking their falſe doctrine, to worſhip thee according to thy holy Law, I moſt humbly beſeech thee to be merciful unto me: and making the ſign of the Croſs upon the ground, he ſtooped down and killed it. Which the black Knight beholding, for joy thanked God with all his heart, & taking his ſword by the point, preſented the handle to Matroco, ſaying unto him: Truly baliant Knight, among ſo many triumphant victories that in times paſt you habe obtained, there never happened any one ſo honorable as this, for that herein you habe not onely banquiſhed me, but your ſelf alſo, that for ſtrength of body are inbincible: wherefore as a victorious Knight I preſent my ſword unto you. It ſhall not be ſo (ſaid Matroco) but the contrary, for I being banquiſhed, ſubmit my ſelf unto your pleaſure, and from this time forwards diſpoſe of me, my goods and honor, as you ſhall think conbenient. I pray you then (ſaid the black Knight) habe pity upon the poor priſoners that eben now I ſaw bound within your Gallies, and let them be ſent for hither, that I might ſpeak with them: With all my heart (ſaid the Giant) and therewith calling his mother, ſaid unto her, Madam, I pray you ſend down unto the ſhips to fetch the priſoners that the Knight deſireth to ſee, and let none of my men ſet foot on land till I ſend them further Commiſſion, which ſhe preſently did. But when Maſter Elizabeth Libee, and the reſt of the priſoners heard the meſſage, they made no little ſorrow, thinking the beſt comfort they could habe would be a moſt miſerable and cruel impriſonment, but when they entred the firſt gate of the Caſtle, where the Porter and Arcalaus lay dead, they were ſomewhat revived, and in better hope than at the firſt, eſpecially when they ſaw the black Knight that came to meet them, who without making himſelf known to any but to Maſter Elizabeth, took him by the hand, and ſaid unto him: My good friend, becauſe I will not that any but you alone ſhall know who I am, I pray you in the morning come and viſit me in an Hermitage that ſtandeth at the foot of this hill, where I will ſtay for you, in the mean time you ſhall find King Luiſart in the Caſtle, who I leabe behinde me, but as you love your life, be ſecret and tell him not who I am. Maſter Elizabeth

was,

was much abashed when he knew him to be Esplandian, and willingly would have had more conference with him, had it not bin for the charge he had given him before, as also that at the same time a Gentlewoman came unto him, and said, Sir Knight, if ever you will see Matroco alive, make haste and come unto him, for he is even now fallen upon the ground, and (as I think is dead) he hath lost so much of his blood. Go (said he) to Master Elizabeth, and help him what you can, for your help will do him more pleasure at this time, than my presence can comfort him, wherewith he left Master Elizabeth with the Gentlewoman, and went unto the Hermitage, where the night before he had lodged, but he got not thither before the Sun went down, being so weary and sore with fighting all the day, that he could not go further: where he found the Hermit and the dumb man sitting together, by whom he was presently unarmed, and meat set before him, for all that day he had not eaten, and having supped, they layed him in a bed, where the Hermits daughter, when she came to see her Father used to lie, and visiting his body to see if he were hurt, they found it much bruised and black in divers places, but not wounded by reason of the goodness of his Armor, which no Sword or other weapon could pierce, then they annointed him with certain ointments that appeased the sorenes of his bruises, wherewith he fell on sleep till the next morning.

CHAP. VI.

Of the great displeasure King *Luisart* took for the departure of the black Knight, and what conference he had with *Arcabonna* Mother to *Matroco*, touching her unfortunate life.

THe black Knight being departed out of the Castle he had newly conquered, and the prisoners entred therein, among the rest King Luisart knew master Elizabeth, wherefore he rose up (sitting by Arcabonna, Matrocos Mother, who as then leaned on her lap) and went to imbrace him, asking him what fortune had brought him thither at that time to save the Giants life, being in so great extremity? And it pleaseth your Grace (said he) once this day I did not think he would have had so much need

néed of my help as he now hath: But as I understand by a Knight that I méet going down the hill, he is in great danger of his life: Nevertheless for the honor of him that commanded me to help him, I will do the best I can. I pray you do so (said the King.) Then master Elizabeth caused Matroco to be softly layed upon his bed, and being unarmed searched his wounds, and perceiving them to be deadly, would not for that time do any thing unto them but stanch their bléeding, leaving the rest till he had slept, wherein he was newly fallen. In the mean time King Luisart not forgetting what master Elizabeth at his coming in had said unto him, asked him what was become of the black Knight: and it pleaseth your Grace (said he) as we entred into the Castle, I met him going secretly from hence, and not minding to return again. By Saint Mary (said the King) have I received so great aid at his hands, and am I so unfortunate, that he should depart from hence without knowing him? Truly I am sorry I stayed here to sée what would become of Matroco, if I had not, I would surely have followed him, and with much importunity have craved his name. Master Elizabeth (said he) will you upon your faith tell me truly whether you know him or not? If it be so, if you will do me any pleasure, hide it no longer from me, for I never had so great desire to know any Knight, not onely for the aid he hath done me, but for the valiant enterprise at this présent atchieved by him. Your grace shal pardon me if it pleaseth you, said master Elizabeth, for it is true that I know him wel, but if I tell you any more, I should do him wrong, for he hath expressely forbidden me to do it. I sée well (said the King) you will but increase the desire I have to know him, & that is worse, by the same means bereave me of all hope ever to sée him again. With that they entred into the Hal, where they méet Arcabonne half dead with sorrow, whom the King in courteous manner prayed to stay a while, asking her how her son did. He doth (said she) as one in whom I have as little hope of life as of the other that lyeth dead in the court, & to say ỳ truth, it séemeth that fortune hath wholly bent her self against me, not ceasing continually to heap sorrow upon sorrow to make me desperate. Notwithstanding I know full well how to be revenged,

and that is, in diſpight of her and her cruelties to bereave my ſelf of life whereof ſhe ſhall loſe her power, which by good reaſon I cannot well prolong, ſeeing ſhe hath not ſpared me one hour of reſt ſince ſhe firſt began, ſtill playing her part in tormenting me, but of all other my miſfortunes, none hath griebed me ſo much as the force of this Knight, by whoſe power (ſaid ſhe unto the King) I ſee thee now delibered out of my hands, and from the cruel torments I had prepared for thee, if accurſed fortune had not withſtood them. Madam (ſaid the King) I pray you declare unto me the cauſe of this your great malice towards me, and whether at any time I habe done you wrong or injury whereby I ſhould deſerbe it: that will I ſhew thee, ſaid Arbaconne, not therein to do thee pleaſure, but rather to griebe thee more when thou ſhalt know and underſtand that I was born and bred in the ſame country, wherein to my great deſpight thou haſt raigned oberlong, for there I and Arcalaus my brother by father and mother, were both begotten and brought up in the art of Nigromancy, which oftentimes we habe practiſed and put in effect, therewith to torment dibers perſons that neber did offend us. In the which art, as age and knowledge increaſed, I growing bery expert, in the end became acquainted with Cartadaque, as then Lord of this Caſtle, and with him I grew in ſo great familiarity, that he married me, and with him eber ſithence habe dwelt here in this Caſtle, where not long after I was delibered of a Son called Lindoraque, after that of another named Macroco, that now lyeth in this bed, and laſtly of the third called Frerion, whom thou haſt ſlain, and my brother alſo, that went to help Argantes the Porter of this Caſtle. And being thus married unto ſuch a husband as Cartadaque, was ſo much feared and redoubted in all places, and habing three of the moſt baliant and worthy knights to my ſons, that eber libed, I was ſo elebated in pride, and ſo little eſteemed of cruel fortune, that I thought it unpoſsible for her to work me any woe. But by tract of time I found it otherwiſe, for by little and little ſhe hath wholly changed my joy into moſt griebous ſorrow, and wilt thou know how: Then I think thou doeſt yet remember the diſcord that long ſithence happened between

thee

thée and Childadan King of Ireland, and of the battel wherein thou obercameſt him, where my deceaſed husband minding to be preſent, expreſly departed from hence thither, and as accurſed fortune would, took my ſon Lindoraque with him, and having travelled many countries, at the laſt arrived at the place where my brother ſtayed for them, travelling all three together with full purpoſe and intent to do thée all the injury they could, and they had ſcarce entered into a forreſt not far from London, but they mét a Knight as then ſurnamed Le Beautenebreux, riding in company of a Gentlewoman, that ware on her head a Call all ſet with ſtrange flowers, whom my Son (as accurſed fortune would) liked ſo well, that with a great deſire to have her to preſent unto the Lady Madaſine his love, commanded one of his Squires to go fetch her to him, which the Knight called Le Beautenebreux, whereof I ſpeak, would not permit, but ſently meſſenger back again well beaten, wherewith my Son being moved, thought to have her by force, but it fell out otherwiſe for him, for at the firſt encounter the Knight with one blow with his Sword, thruſt him into the body, whereof he died, and as much had chanced to his Uncle Arcalaus, if his horſe had not ſaved him by running away, having firſt loſt four of his fingers on the right hand. Yet fortune not contenting her ſelf with this miſchief, prepared me a woſe, for my husband (who for his valour and prowess was feared and redoubted throughout all Aſia and Europe) was cruelly ſlain by the ſame murtherer of Lindoraque, upon the ſame day the battel was fought, if thou canſt remember it, whereby ever ſithence I remained a widdow with my other Sons as then very young and tender of age, with whom I have paſſed the greateſt part of my days moſt extreamly, weeping and lamenting with continual ſadneſs, which had ben more grievous unto me, had it not béen for the hope I conceived of their valour and prowess. But to come to the point of my diſcourſe, time and reaſon having in a manner ſuppreſſed my forepaſſed ſorrows, news was brought me of the laſt victory thou didſt obtain by the prowess of the Knight named Le Beautenebreux (now as it is ſaid, called Amadis de Gaule) as likewiſe of my brothers imprisonment, wherewith I was ſo grie-

bed, that respecting not my old years, I took upon me to travel into Britain, hoping by some means to get him out of thy hands. But before I arrived there, I had certain news of his delibery, nevertheless considering with my self the fore-passed injuries I have received by thy kinsmen, namely by that wicked wretch Amadis De Gaule, I determined before my return hither to finde the means to make him know that small good will I bear him. But having imployed all my art, and finding it in vain to work any further therein against him, by reason of a ring he beareth daily on his finger, given him by that wicked enchantress Urganda: I determined to prove my skill (which could not take effect in him) against thee, being advertised of thy often riding to hunt, with very few in thy company, where I made thee see one of my Gentlewomen, and a villain that would deflower her, whom thou thoughtest to succour, and if thou now remembrest me, I am the very same thou foundest in the pavillion, following after him that fled before thee, and there thou remainedst inchanted, from whence we carryed thee into our Barque, and without knowledge unto any but mine own servants, thou wast brought hither by Sea, with full deliberation to cause thee languish in prison: in the mean time with the help of my allies and friends, thy country should be invaded, but I find my self deceived. For that this place which never was conquered by any power whatsoever the Kings of Turky, or the Emperors of Constantinople, could ever bring against it, in less then one day is both conquered and taken by one simple Knight, with the loss of my two Sons, and others, esteemed Paragons among the best Knights in the world, whereby it may clearly be perceived, that by means of thy captivity there is much more mischief happened unto me then sorrow to thy person. While Arcabonne made this long discourse, the King that still beheld her in ths face, remembred well it was she to whom he spake in the pavillion, wherefore he said unto her, In good faith Madam I now believe you better then at the first, yet me thinketh you do me wrong to make me bear the burthen of another mans offence. Thinkest thou so (said she?) No truly, for thy imprisonment onely had wrought great damage unto divers men, but to

me

me and mine great profit and advantage. It might be so(answered the King) notwithstanding I will not cease to do you all the favor and pleasure that I can. In the mean time I pray you take your adversity with as great constancy as you may. By my soul (said she) thou speakest at thy pleasure, and therewith in a great fury, she went into Matroco's Chamber, leaving the King that had not eaten all that day, wherefore he called master Elizabeth and the other company, that mean time had prepared his meat, and sitting down to supper, they discoursed of the talk he and Arcabonne had together, till it was time to go to rest when the King went to bed, leaving Libee to guard the Castle.

CHAP. VII.

How the Giant *Matroco* died, whereat *Arcabonne* was in such a fury, that having failed to kill King *Luisart*, she threw her self headlong out of a window into the sea.

KIng Luisart was not fully asleep, but he was forced to awake by means of a cry of a woman that he heard, making great lamentation, wherefore starting up, and calling master Elizabeth and the rest of his company, he took a Hatchet which he had layed under the bolster of his Bed, and went to see what it meant, and as he passed through the Hall, he perceived Arcabonne coming towards him (covered onely with a Mantle) wringing her hands, and tearing of her hair, making great sorrow. Wherewith the King went to her, asking her what she meant? Alas(said she)that which I most feared,and ever sithence yesterday most assuredly expected, is fallen out: and as she uttered those words, she pulled out a naked sword that she bare under her arm, wherewith she meant to kill the King But as fortune would, he perceived the blow coming, and stepped aside, and with the force of the blow the sword hitting upon the pavement, fell out of the old womans hands, wherewith the King stepped upon it, and when he stoped to take up, Arcabonne perceiving the chamber door where master Elizabeth was, to be open, she ran thither, and threw her self out of a window into the sea: the King followed her not, but went into the chamber

where

where Matroco lay, and perceiving him to be dead, came forth again into the Hall, where he met master Elizabeth, that told him news of Arcabonnes death. In good truth (said he) there is no extremity like to that of a woman, behold, I pray you with what fury she was possessed, for as I issued out of the Chamber, I met her, and thinking with fair speeches and good perswasions to comfort her, she failed not much to kill me with this sword that I have in my hand: and as they beheld it, the King knew it to be the same he wore when he was inchanted, which pleased him so well, that he said, Ha good sword, the best and faithfullest companion that ever man had! how many victories have I had by thy means, and what combates and adventures have I brought to an end by thy help? And by great misfortune having lost thee, thou knewest me, for being in a mad womans hands, that with thee would have slain me, thou hast not onely denied her that favor, but hast fallen out of her hands to return again unto him that never (while his arm is able to wield thee) will forsake thee. Now (said he to Libee) if we chance to be assaulted, we have wherewith to defend us. Truly (said master Elizabeth) I believe all those that could hurt us in this place, are either dead or fled away, wherefore I am of opinion in the morning to bury them that are slain, mean time expecting some means whereby we may return into your Graces country, we will enquire what is become of the black Knight that you so much desire to know. You shall do well (said the King) and therewith each man went to rest till the morning, that master Elizabeth and others of his company went to bury the porter & the rest of the dead Knights, among the which they knew Arca'aus the Inchanter, that not fifteen days before had arrived in the Castle; for at his delivery out of prison, being advertised of King Luisart's sudden departure, he suspected his sister Arcabonne had stollen him away, and therefore came expressly to the Castle armed in green as you have heard, and although master Elizabeth had seen him oftentimes before, yet at the first sight he doubted it was he, considering where not long before he had left him, wherefore he sent to tell the King, that presently came to see him, who knew him well, yet I thought (said he) he had still been prisoner in the Ferm Isle:

And

And it pleaſeth your Grace (ſaid maſter Elizabeth) he was delibered from thence before my departure, and therewith ſhewed him the means how, as it is at large declared in the end of our Fourth Book. Behold (ſaid the King) how great are the judgements of God! let his body be put into ſome cold place, for I am well aſſured that his ſoul ſhall endure more heat than ever it had in this world.

CHAP. VIII.

How maſter *Elizabeth* went to find the black Knight in the Hermitage, and what conference they had.

ARcalaus and the reſt being buried, King Luiſart went into his Chamber, and as he looked into the ſea, he could not ſee the ſhips that Matroco brought with him, wherefore enquiring which way they went, he was certified, that when Arcabonne threw her ſelf out of the window into the Sea, they took up her dead body, and laying it in their Veſſels, hoiſed ſayls, and put to ſea. Let them go to the devil (ſaid the King) and we to dinner, if there be any thing to eat: your dinner is ready (ſaid maſter Elizabeth) when it pleaſeth your Grace to ſit down: whereupon the meat was brought in, and the King did eat with a good appetite, but he had taken ſo little reſt the night before, that as he ſate at the Table he fell aſleep. Wherefore riſing up, he laid him down on his Bed, commanding his men not to wake him, wherewith maſter Elizabeth was well pleaſed, knowing that in the mean time he might have convenient leiſure to go unto Eſplandian, as he had promiſed, whereupon he departed ſecretly out of the Caſtle, and going down the hill, went ſo long that he came to the Hermitage, where he found the Hermite and the dumb man ſitting at the door, and he ſaluting them, asked if the black Knight were there? the Hermit ſaid no: but the dumb man made ſigns that he ſhould go into the Chamber, which he did, where he found him very melancholy lying upon a bed. But when he perceived maſter Elizabeth, he took him by the hand, and ſaid: My good friend maſter Elizabeth you are welcome hither, tell me I pray you how you left the Ferm Ille, in this man-

ner

ner to serve Matroco and his barbarous companions? Wherewith he laughed, for the Giant had tyed him to a chain, and made him row in his Gallies as other slaves did. My Lord (said master Elizabeth) when you received the Order of Knighthood, and that King Bruneo, Quedragant, and all our company that were as then with your father Amadis de Gaule, slept by means of the melodious noise of nine Trumpets that sounded on the shoar, Grasinde my Mistris sent me on a message to the Marques Saluder her brother, to certifie him of her Marriage with the Prince of Sansuegue, wherefore I imbarqued my self, and had so good a winde, that in short time after I arrived at Constantinople, where I found the Emperor, that took great pleasure to hear me discourse what had happened sithence the return of Gastilles his Nephew. And the next day when I meant to return, the Princess Leonorine, who in my minde is the beautifullest Princess living at this time, sent for me, most instantly desiring me that in the presence of Queen Minoresse, with divers other Ladies and Gentlewomen, I would shew her what I had heard touching the Knight with the green sword. For (said she) although that now we understand he is named Amadis de Gaule, yet will we not change his other name, till such time he sendeth us some other of his linage, or else return himself to do us service, according to his promise. Then I shewed them of the strangeness of the Ark of Lovers, the singularities of the Isle, whereof they never had heard, the loss of King Luisart, the maner how you received the Order of Knighthood, the ceremonies that at the same time Urganda commanded to be used, the commandment that your father Amadis de Gaule gave you to come and serve them in this place, and lastly how in the end we fell asleep in the great Serpent from whence we were carried (not knowing thereof) to the Palace of Apolidon, where when we awaked, we found all our company together (onely you) Manley, the King of Dacia, Ambor, and Talanque, not knowing what was become of you. And while I made this long discourse, the Princess Leonorine would not suffer me to make an end, but interrupting me in my tale, said unto me: Master Elizabeth, when my Cousin Gastilles returned from thence, I remember that among

among other things by him declared, he said something touching the yong gentleman whereof you speak, wherefore I pray you shew us what you know of him: wherein seeking to fulfil her request, I began to shew her the manner of your nativity, how King Luisart found you in the forrest with the Lions, of the letters he received that day, what letters you had on your body when you were born, whereof some were as white as Snow, signifying your own name, the rest as red as blood, shewing the name of your Lobe, as yet unknown, by reason the characters cannot be understood. Then smilingly she asked me how you would know it, and I answered her, that lobe in time would learn, and that for certain she would be of royal blood, and one that should be the beautifullest Lady liuing in her time. Truly (said she) he deserveth no less, wherefore I pray you heartily when you see him, perswade him to come hither and fulfil the promise that his father made us, for I have great desire to see him, that he might be as much at our commandment, as heretofore his Father Amadis hath been, which I promised her to do, although I said I doubted it would not be so soon as I could wish. So my Lord I stayed certain days at Constantinople, speaking continually of you, that done, I imbarqued my self again, where by evil fortune we fell into the hands of the Giant Matroco, who as then was upon the Sea. While master Elizabeth shewed the black Knight of the beauty of the Princess Leonorine, and what she had inquired of him, lobe entered so far into his heart, that oftentimes he changed colour, but for the time he covered his intent as much as he could: and entering into another matter, asked master Elizabeth how he found the means to leabe King Luisart. As well as I would wish (said he) for as soon as he had dined, he lay down to sleep, in the mean time I came hither to you. I pray you (said the Knight) let him know nothing touching me. And wherefore (said master Elizabeth) will you hide your self from him, seeing there is no Prince liuing in the world, worthier then he to be honored and served of all good Knights? It is true (said the Knight) but I have done so little as yet, that I am ashamed he should hear no better news of me, seeing I am in hope, that in time I shall do

great matters, which of themselves will set forth my renown, without the praise of other men. Seeing it is your pleasure (said master Elizabeth) I will do so, although it would rejoyce him much, to hear that such unexpected aid should come unto him onely by your means. That shall be at another time (said the Knight) and not now: Wherefore lest he should miss you when he awaketh, I pray you return unto the Castle, and when you see conbenient time, come hither again to visit me. Wherewith master Elizabeth took his leave, bidding him farewel, and went the same day he came towards the Castle.

CHAP. IX.

How *Carmelle* the Hermits Daughter found the black Knight sleeping in the Hermitage, and thinking to kill him, perceiving him so fair, she fell in love with him.

MAster Elizabeth gone from the Hermitage where he left the black Knight, went so fast and made such haste, that he came again unto the Castle, not missed of any, yet the King was awake before he came, who leaning in a window, and seeing him below in the Court, asked him if he had slept: No, and it liketh your Grace (said he) I have been abroad, walking along the country, which I finde enbironed with the goodliest meddows that ever were seen: come up hither (said the King) and we will talk with you, but he was no sooner entred into the Chamber, when Carmelle the Hermites Daughter came to the King, and kneeling down before him, said, May it please your Grace to entertain me into your service, that am one of your natural subjects, and will be during life: wherewith the King took her up and said, Gentlewoman, if you desire any thing at my hands, assure your self it shall not be denyed, for I did never during my life but honor and pleasure such as you are, and although such favors have oftentimes turned to my great trouble, therein do I blame no man but my self, for that God justly sendeth both good and evil, when, where, and to whom it pleaseth him, wherefore I pray you shew me who you are.

Then

Then Carmelle made a long discourse, how from her youth upwards she had serued her mistriss Arcabonne, and what occasion moued her father to become an Hermit, as you heard before. Truly Gentlewoman (said the King) if you will return into great Britain, I will take you with me. I will do (said she) what your Grace commandeth: in the mean time I pray you grant me leaue to giue my father intelligence who you are, for he will be most ready and glad to do your Grace seruice. With a good will (said the King) and tell him I desire to see him, wherewith Carmelle thanked his Grace, and because it was late, she went again into her Chamber till the next morning that she rose, and issuing out of the Castle, about break of the day went down a certain path, she ordinarily used to go, whereby she came into the Hermitage at such time as the Hermite and the dumb man were gone to the Barque to fetch such necessaries as the black Knight wanted, who in the mean time slept in his bed, for after that master Elizabeth had giuen him intelligence what the Princess Leonorine had said, he could not rest, till the very same time when she entered into her Fathers cell, wherein she found him, and not doubting any thing, went into the Chamber, where she heard the black Knight snort, wherewith being abashed she opened the window, and perceiued him asleep, his Sword hanging at his beds-head, which she took down, and softly drew out of the Scabberd, finding it freshly spotted with blood, whereupon she suspected it was he that had slain Frerion, Matroco, and others in the Castle, and as she looked about her she knew his black Armor, wherewith she was in such a fear, that she had almost fallen down, and let the Sword fall out of her hands, but taking courage, she went nearer to the bed, to know him better, being fully determined if it were he, to kill him as he lay, and therewith began by little and little to uncouer his face, but he shewed so fair, that suddenly the fury she had, changed into so burning a loue, that during her life it was neuer quenched, in such manner that the more she beheld him, the more did her loue increase, and as he fell on sleep when his minde was busied with the imagination conceiued of Leonorine, after Carmelle had beheld him long, he

turned towards her, and without waking, cast forth a great sigh saying in his sleep, Alas poor wretch, what shall become of me? The Gentlewoman knew well he had not seen her, wherefore she imboldened her self to kiss him, and found his face all wet with tears, whereby she feared he had some melancholly humor that troubled him, and although she estéemed not thereof, féeling her new disease much more then his grief, taking all to her advantage, she hoped from that time forwards to find the meanes to obtain his love, yet did she fail thereof, for that love (to shew his power) had wounded them both diversly in one place, and at one time, a thing almost incredible, for who would ever think that little god would enter into such a place? Where a poor Hermit lived all alone in most strict manner, with a few cold roots, and not his belly full of bread: yet did he overcome them both, in the most unfit time (as it may be thought) that could be found, for the black Knight had indured so great travel in fighting, and the Gentlewoman séen so many of her friends slain at one time, that the one had not so much néed of comfort, but the other as much cause to rest. If then it be so (as it is most true) that we are all subject to this Tyrant, he that hath past the flower of his youth, not tasting of his fury, may not think himself in any thing more happy, séeing it is his manner to constrain young men to love, and oftentimes old fools to dote. In that sort the Gentlewoman did pennance for the evil she conceived against the black Knight, and had continued longer there, had it not been for fear to be discovered. Wherefore with the sword in her hand she returned back again towards the Castle, and without being once perceived, entred at a postern door, whereof she had the key, and so went up into her chamber, departing from the hermitage not long before her Father and the dumb man returned from the barque, and found the Knight sleeping, who presently awaked, and missing his Sword, asked them if they had taken it away. No truly (said the Hermit) for we came but now from the Sea side Wherewith Esplandian esteeming it lost, made account, that as he had conquered it after a strange manner, so he had lost it by a stranger means, but the Hermit and the dumb man sought it about the house, and could not finde it.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

How King *Luisart* being advertised by *Carmelle* where the Black Knight was, departed with her alone to finde him out.

CArmelle returned to the Castle (as it is said before) went to the King, who at the same time was talking with master Elizabeth, touching the wrong he thought the black Knight did him, in departing thence without being known, seeking by that means if it were possible to draw from him what he knew as touching the Knight: but all in vain, for the King was not so subtile to undermine him, but master Elizabeth was as crafty to prevent him, not intending to falsifie the trust reposed in him: and although the Gentlewoman had determined to shew ỹ king what she had learned of the Knight, hoping thereby to obtain her purpose. Nevertheless, seeing master Elizabeth in presence, she held her peace till he went away, and perceiving the King alone, said unto him, My Lord, if it pleaseth your Grace to shew me so much favor, as to assist me in a thing that importeth me as much my life, in the behalf of the Knight that you so much desire to see, before to morrow at night I will shew him unto you, if you think good, in such a place, where you may easily speak with him: and to the end you shall not suspect me of untruth, I will shew you a certain token, that when you see it, I am assured you will easily believe me. Gentlewoman (said the King) if you do so, I will not fail if it be possible, to satisfie your request. I beseech your Grace (said she) when you are both together, it would please you to be a mean unto him in my behalf to grant me a gift that I shall ask him. By the faith of a Prince (said he) I will not fail to do it, nor a greater matter than that, if it lieth in my power. Then follow me (said the Gentlewoman) bringing him where she had laid the sword, and shewing it unto him, asked if he had never seen it. That I have (said the King, and I would to God the Knight that knoweth so well how to handle it, were as near unto me as it is. You shall see him in the morning (said she) if it pleaseth you to follow me. That will I do (said the King) armed or unarmed I estéem not whether, so I may see him.

Then

Then be you ready (said she) when I shall call, and let no man go with you. Content (said the King) wherewith he went out of the Chamber, and passing through the Court, he met Libee and others, to whom he said, that in the morning he meant to walk along the Rock (because maister Elizabeth had certified him it was so goodly a Countrey) and that none but Carmelle should bear him company: and falling into other speeches, they passed the time till they went to rest, but the King could not sleep for the great desire he had to see the Knight, whereby he was hardly fallen asleep, when Carmelle came to awake him, saying: My Lord, may it please your Grace to remember your promise? Let us go (said he) and therewith making himself ready, commanded two horses to be sadled, one for himself, the other for Carmelle, and issuing out of the Castle, rode toward the Hermitage. And they had not travelled far, but they perceived a man coming towards them in great haste, and as he came near, the Gentlewoman knew him, asking him what he meant to make such haste, and whither he rode? I ride to the Castle (said he) to fetch Matroco, and his brother Frerion, with all speed to help their Uncle Lindoraque, who coming to see them, hath met with two Knights armed all in white, that have slain his men, and (as I think) I left him in as great danger as possibly may be. When the king heard him, he thought him to be of the black knights company, and said unto the Gentlewoman, I pray you stay here with this man, and I will ride to see them, and with that he set spurs to his Horse, and taking the same way the other came, he perceived afar off the two knights fighting with the Giant, that defended himself most valiantly with his Mace, forcing them oftentimes to recoil, but the two knights as bold as nimble, handled him in such sort, that he knew not how to defend himself, and if he had not slain one of their horses, it had gone worse with him. Nevertheless the knight on horse-back seeking to revenge his companion, was nothing abashed, but when the other rose up, set more fierce upon the Giant then before, in such maner, that they closed, and striving together, sought by all means to unhorse each other. Mean time the knight on foot went unto the Giant, and taking him by the left

leg,

leg, pulled him by such force, that both he and the other knight fell off their horses, and holding each other fast, the Giant fell under with his face upwards, wherewith the knight that threw him down, thrust him into the face, that he was constrained to let go his hold, nevertheless rising up again with great force, and laying hold upon the knight that had so wounded him, he threw him on the ground, mean time the other gave the Giant such a blow upon the head, that he began to reel, and therewith stretching out his legs, yielded up the ghost. With that the king rode somewhat nearer, and perceived the two knights to bear black Crosses, that shewed them to be Christians, wherefore riding boldly unto them, he went so near that they knew him, whereupon they went to do him honor, much abashed to see him. But the King perceiving the honor they did him, was no less abashed, and said unto them: My good friends, I know you not, I pray you put off your Helmets that I may see your faces, which they did, whereby he knew the one to be Talanque son of Galaor, the other Ambor de Gadel, son of Angriote de Stravaulx, whom he friendly embraced, and said unto them, In faith my good friends, it is not without cause, if it liketh you well, to see me here, for all my life have I desired the companies of your fathers, the like do I of their children, wherefore for the love of God I pray you shew me what strange adventure hath brought you into this Countrey. And it pleaseth your Grace (said Talanque) we seek after a Knight armed all in black, of whom as yet we can hear no newes. Do you know his name (said the king?) That we do (said Ambor) for it is your Nephew Esplandian: that contents me (said the king) do but follow me and I will bring you where he is. With that Ambor, who before was alighted to honor the king, mounted again on horseback, and Talanque on the Giants horse, for his own was slain, and all three together rode the way the king came thither, till such time they espied the Gentlewoman that stayed for him: who perceiving them to ride in such haste towards her, was in minde to have fled away, fearing they had taken the king, and forcibly had him with them, but perceiving them by their gestures to be his friends, she stayed till they came to her, saying to the king:

My Lord, where hath your Grace gotten company so soon? Gentlewoman (said he) you shall know it all in good time, but what have you done (said he) with the man that I left with you? Let us know what news he hath told you. Truly (said she) I had no sooner assured him of the death of Matroco and the rest of the Castle, but he fled over this hill, as if all the devils in hell had been behind him: yet he told me that the Giant his master had heard some rumor thereof, and for the same cause was coming to the Castle to know the truth, accompanied onely with two Knights, that he caused to ride before him, but to their hard fortunes, for he found them both slain, not knowing who had done it, but onely that not long after he met with two strange Knights, that assayled him, and left them fighting (as he said) together. By God (said the King) if the first two Knights sped hardly, their master that followed after them had little better entertainment, for they are all slain upon the way, and here are the Knights that did it, whom I pray you let us take with us, for they are friends and companions unto that Knight you have promised to shew me. Let us go then (said she) seeing it is your Graces pleasure: and therewith they rode unto the Hermitage, at the entery whereof, they found the Hermit set upon a stone, who being abashed to see his daughter in such company, asked whither she went. Father (said she) here is King Luisart your Prince and mine, whom I have brought to see you. And althought the Hermit had not seen him in long time before, yet he presently knew him, wherewith he stepped to kiss his feet, which the King would not suffer him to do, but imbraced him, and lighting off his horse, followed the Gentlewoman, till he met the dumb man, that hearing the noise and trampling of horses, came to see who they were, and perceiving the king, he bowed his head before him. Nevertheless the king went foward, not staying to speak unto him, entring presently after Carmelle into the Chamber, where he found the knight set upon the beds-side. Wherewith Esplandian presently knew him, but the king taking him up, weeping for joy imbraced him. With that Talanque and Ambor entred in, and perceiving their companion (that they so long had sought) were marvel-

lous

lous glad, and coming to imbrace him, the King said unto Esplandian: My son, although you have sought by all means to hide your self from us, yet God hath so wrought, that at one instant we have all three found you out: wherefore I pray you let us depart hence, and go with us unto the Castle, where you shall be better at your ease than in this simple Hermitage. My Lord, (said he) I am at your commandment, with that he went to imbrace Talanque and Ambor, asking them (and they him) what had happened unto them since Urganda caused them to be dubbed Knights. By Gods help (said the King) you shall stay to hear the sequel until we be in the Castle, for then you shall have better leisure to declare the same. With that he called Carmelle, willing her to return with all dilligence to the Castle, and command Libee to bring one of Matroco's Horses for Esplandian. My Lord (said Ambor) it will be late before he cometh hither, he shall rather have my Horse, and I will go on foot: but you shall not (said the King) get you upon Carmelles Horse, and let her sit up behinde you. In which manner they rode unto the Castle, after whom the Hermit and the dumb man followed as fast as they could. But they scarce alighted off their horses, Ambor and Talanque being unarmed, but Carmelle moved with the extream passions of love she bare unto the black Knight, had almost slain her self with the sword that the day before she had stoln from him, the occasion whereof proceeded from a conceit that he would disdain her as unworthy of him, he being the son of Amadis de Gaule, as she understood: yet in the end she remembred the promise the King had made, wherefore she determined to desire so much of him, to be a means unto Esplandian, that he would grant she might never be absent from him, but would serve him during her life with all fidelity, and to the same end, putting her determination in effect, as they sat all together, she kneeled before the King, and said, My Lord, now your Grace seeth I have kept my promise. That is true (said he) and while I live I shall not be unmindful of it. My Lord (said she) then I trust your Grace hath not forgotten the gift you promised me: and to performe your word, I pray you be a means to the black Knight that he will grant me my request. Gentlewoman (said the

King)be you assured I will do it with all my heart. Your Grace (said she) as yesterday gave me leave to visite my father in the Hermitage, who as it fortuned when I came thither was gone forth, whereat I was abashed, because he never used to be far from thence: And finding the door open, I went into a chamber (that I caused to be furnished) wherein sometimes I use to lie, when time or foul weather would not permit me to return unto the castle, where I found this Knight (pointing to Esplandian) which you also much desired to see, fast sleeping, his Sword hanging at his beds-head, wherewith not long sithence he hath slain those, that from my infancy had brought me up, and being moved by reason of my no little loss, with a desire to revenge both my self and my friends, I thought to kill him, and was so nèer the point to execute my will, that as I held the Sword drawn in my hand, and began to lift up mine arm to give the blow, he seemed so fair within mine eye, that suddenly I was surprised with love, and that so fervently, that were it not for the promise you have made me, I had not been alive at this present time. Nevertheless having sithence understood, that he by whom I am in this extremity, in estate and degrèe, not to be my equal, whereby I perceive my self unworthy either to be wife or companion unto him, I have somewhat moderated my first deliberation in such manner, that I will hold my self more then satisfied, if it please him I may only continue with him, to serve at his commandment during my life, which in reason he cannot well deny me, for let him do what he will, so long as life is in my body, I will never forsake him, if I be not constrained thereunto. Wherefore my Lord, for the honor of God, I beseech your Grace to finde the means my poor request may once be granted, and you Gentlemen (said she to Ambor and Talanque) I pray you put to your helps, that by your favors the life of me poor lover, not beloved, may be prolonged. The King hearing the Gentlewoman (that while she spake sometime blushed, and other whiles waxed pale) make this discourse, could hardly abstain to laugh, thinking how inconsiderately she had fallen into so great extremity, whereby he feared if he should make an answer other then pleased her, she would kill her self, but with courteous

speech

ſpæch he ſaid unto her : Gentlewoman, your requeſt is ſo reaſonable, that I am of opinion he will not deny it : and for my part, I will intreat him as much as poſsible I can. My Lord (ſaid Eſplandian) I will do what your Grace commandeth. Grant her then I pray you (ſaid the King) what ſhe craveth at your hands, that from henceforth ſhe may be called your faithful ſervant, her honor always ſaved, as in the Knighthood you are bound. I will do it, anſwered Eſplandian, and thereof I aſſure you (ſaith he) ſpeaking to Carmelle, who kneeling on the ground kiſſed his feet, and thanked the King and him moſt heartily, reputing her ſelf moſt happy, in obtaining ſo great favor.

CHAP. XI.

How *Talanque* and *Ambor* ſhewed the King what adventure they had found ſeeking for *Eſplandian* their companion, after they had received the order of Knighthood.

YOu heard before in what ſort King Luiſart was delibered out of priſon by his nephew Eſplandian, but as yet he knew not the manner how he received the order of Knighthood. Wherefore as they roſe from dinner, the King deſired him to tel him how he was made Knight, as alſo what happened unto him ſince that time, to the end (ſaid he) that Talanque and Ambor may do the like. Then Eſplandian told how Urganda came unto the Ferm Iſland in the great Serpent, what ſpæch ſhe had with Amadis De Gaule, and others that were with him, the order ſhe uſed to dub him Knight, together with Talanque, Ambor, Manely, and the King of Denmark : The ſleep wherein they fell, and that when he awaked, he found himſelf at the foot of the Rock of the Enchantreſs, in company of Sergil his Squire and two dumb men, alſo how he conquered the Sword, with his arrival at the mountain, where he found the Hermit, that diſſwaded him from fighting with the Giants. By my head (ſaid the King) I never heard ſtranger things. And now Ambor (ſaid he) what became of you? My Lord (ſaid Ambor) my companion and I were likewiſe aſleep, and when we awaked we found our ſelves in a little Barque with our two horſes, in a

Haven of the Sea called Armata, in the Countrey of Norway, (as then unknown to us) where we landed before a Town, not onely to know in what countrey we were, but also to seek for victuals. And as we went towards it, the watch of the town (by reason of certain dissension not long before moved betwéen them and their neighbors) sent to know what we would have. Wherewith we made them answer, we were Knights adventurous that came from the Ferm Isle, cast upon that shore by tempest of weather. In good truth said he that spake unto us, our King hath so great cause to use your helps, that if you go unto him, I am well assured he will bid you welcome. We asked him the Kings name, and what Countrey we were in. My Lords (said he) the Countrey is called Norway, whereof Adroni father in law to Agraies, son to the King of Scots one, of the best Knights in the world, is our King, I know not whether you know him. And what cause (said we) hath your King to use our help? I will tell you (said he) he is so old, that one of his nephews, his Sisters son, (procured thereto by evil counsel) is risen in Arms against him, seeking to have the Government of the Countrey, in respect (as he saith) his Uncle is no more able to rule the same. And under that pretence hath already usurped a great part thereof, and now lieth in Camp before one of the best Cities in this Land, which the King by no means can relieve, by reason that most of his trustiest friends have forsaken him, and hold with the young presumptuous fool, that winneth them by fair promises, a thing that oftentimes happeneth unto such as fortune favoreth not, and when men are fallen, they are not onely abandoned of strangers, but by their own kindred and friends, that properly may be tearmed friends for the present time. In good faith (said we) if the Town will give us victuals, and one to guide us, we will gladly go and present our service unto him, not only for the love of Agraies, to whom we are companions, but for the right he hath, as you have told us. That shall be done (said he) and therewith desired us to stay till he came again from the City, where he stayed not long, but he brought what we desired, and a guide that conducted us so well, that the next day about dinner time we arrived where the king lay. Who being adverti-

sed

sed of our coming, and that we were of Agraies companions, entertained us most courteously, commanding one of his Gentlemen to unarm us in one of his best chambers, whither he came, and after he had bidden us welcome, began in the same manner to shew us all what the watch had before declared unto us, and what an unnatural part his Nephew shewed unto him, procured thereunto by two Knights, in whom onely he putteth his whole trust, because (said he) they are well assured, that not any of my Knights dareth enter into combate with them, they are estéemed so baliant and hardy. But who hath moved them and your cousin (said we) to undertake so foul an action? Because (said the King) I have no issue male, and my cousin alledgeth I am over old to govern the country, saying, it is fitter for him then for me to do it: but if I can I will hold him from it, and kéep it for my daughter Olinde and Agraies her husband: By my soul (said I) I am of this opinion, that séeing this war is begun onely to try the title you both pretend in one thing, it were good your quarrel should be ended by the Combate of two Knights of both parts, without the death and destruction of so many poor innocent people as daily perish by the same means, remitting the issue thereof to those whom it shall please God to make victorious: and if it pleaseth you, I and my companion will be the two Knights that shall fight for you. But when he heard me speak in that manner, he paused a while, séeming very pensive, till in the end he answered me and said, Sir Knights, I am not yet so well acquainted with you, that I should venture to hazard so great a Kingdom as this is upon your valor: Nevertheless, if you will assure me for a truth that you are Knights of the Ferm Island, I am content to stand to it whatsoever may chance. For there can none but baliant Knights come from thence, being assured (as I suppose) that otherwise the Lord of the place would not give them intertainment. Then we swore unto him, that what we had said was true. Whereupon he presently dispatched a trumpet with message to his enemy, to offer him the combate, who hearing the news séemed very glad, making account that his two Knights (so much estéemed) would easily overcome any two of the best Knights the King had. So that returning the

messenger

messenger again, he sent one of his trumpets with him to conclude the combate, with the day, time and place where it should be done, as also what pledges should on both sides be given for performance thereof, so that on the day appointed, after each party had solemnly taken their oaths, we entred into that lists, where we had a cruel and dangerous Combate one against the other, but in the end, right lying in our sides, we wan the victory. And as we would have stricken off their heads, the kings nephew desired us most earnestly to grant them their lives which we agréed unto, upon condition, that from that time forwards he should suffer his uncle to raign in peace, not molesting him any more, which he promised to perform. In this Combate we were so wounded, that of force we continued in Norway longer then we meant to do, where during our abode, certain Merchants arrived in the City, that had séen (as they told us) upon the Sea, néer unto the Rock of the enchantress, a Serpent greater then any vessel, which so much astonished them, that they knew not what to do, whereby we heard news of Esplandian. With that (although we were not altogether healed of our wounds) yet we besought the King to cause us to be conducted thither, which he willingly granted, and we took Sea, with so good a wind, that within six days after we approached the Rock where the Serpent stayed, that at the first made us somewhat abashed, although we had seen it oftentimes before. Nevertheless, we found it flashing such flames of fire out of the mouth and nostrils thereof, that we feared the fire would fall into our Ship, whereby not without much pain and trouble, we procured our Master and Mariners to approach it, and perceiving no creature aboard to speak unto, we began to hollow unto them with so loud a voice, that at the last Sergil appeared upon the hatches, and weeping, told us what had happened unto his master on the Rock of the Enchantress, and how after that one of the dumb men had caused him to enter into a little Barque, and therewith put to Sea, so that he knew not if he were dead or living, for he had heard no news of him, and there he stayed with another dumb man in the greatest care that might be. With that we willed him to call the dumb man unto us, and when he came.

came, by signs we made unto him, we shewed him what pleasure he might do us if he would bring us to the place where his fellow had carryed Esplandian, which as it seemed he was content to do, for presently thereupon he entred into our vessels and sailed so well, that the tenth day after he set us on land, hard by the place where we slew the Giant and the two Knights, and so your Grace hath heard what fortunes we have passed since we received the order of Knighthood. Truly (said the King) if those of Manely and the King of Denmark be as strange, it may well be said, there never happened the like beginning unto six young Knights.

CHAP. XII.

How one night as King *Luisart* was in his bed, thinking how he might return again into great *Britain*, he heard so pleasant a sound of instruments, that he rose up to see where it might be: and what happened after that.

KIng Luisart continued so long in the Castle on the mountain, that at the last he waxed weary, not so much for the desire he had to be in his own country, as for the grief he certainly knew the Queen would conceive, by reason of his long absence, which kinde of pensibeness he continued certain nights together, that by mean thereof he could take no rest, till at the last one night among the rest about half an hour before day, he heard ye swe^etest musick that ever played, wherewith he arose out of his bed, and without making any noise opened the window, to hear it better. But as then it was very dark, and the wind blew so hard, that the Sea rising therewith, beat against the hollowness of the Rock, in such sort that the noise thereof, and the sound of musick, made a new kind of harmony, wherewith he was so much delighted, that he awaked Esplandian, Ambor and Talanque, that slept soundly, as yong men without melancholly humors, are accustomed to do. But when they heard the musick, they stayed not long in their beds, but went to the window to see whom it might be, but they could see nothing till day began to appear. Wherewith they perceived the great Ser-

pent

pent furging on the ſhoar, wherewith they were exceeding glad, making full account that the arrival thereof brought them some good news: Wherewith they made them ready, and without longer staying, issued out of the Castle, to see who was in the same, and as they stood on the shoar, they perceived a small Boat, and a Gentlewoman coming out of it, bearing in her arms a Packet covered with Taffaty, who coming unto the King, with most humble reverence said unto him, My Lord, and it pleaseth your Grace, Urganda recommendeth her unto your Majesty, and hath commanded me to give you intelligence, that being busied to aid the Emperor and the Empress your Daughter, in a certain thing of great importance, she hath not had the means to come and visit you. Then presenting the packet to Esplandian, said unto him, Gentle knight, my Mistris that loveth and favoreth you, as it is well known, giveth you those Arms, and sendeth you word by me, that as she gave you the black Arms, that hitherto you have born (to testifie thereby the sorrow for the loss of the king, that as then was common among all his true subjects and friends) so in these you shall finde the device of the Lady, that in beauty and comlinesse of person surpasseth all the Ladies in the world, as Amadis your father in time past well proved, when she set the Crown upon her head, in remembrance whereof she hath ever sithence born the like device. Who from henceforth shall be so strongly fixed in your heart, that you shall never give stroke with sword nor launce, but you will remember her. Which she said in respect of the princess Leonorine, Daughter to the Empeeor of Constantinople, that by destiny was appointed onely unto him. And opening the pack she pulled out a Helmet, Shield, Haubert, and a Caparison for a horse, all of white, imbroidered with crowns of gold, and set with Diamonds and Pearls, which he most willingly received, saying to the Gentlewoman: I pray you in my behalf give Urganda hearty thanks for the great honor and much good she hath continually done unto me, assuring her, that wheresoever I become, she hath a knight of me ready to obey her, and that for the love of her will bear these Arms as long as it pleaseth her. Be it so in the name of God (said she) but before long time be past,

you

you shall have another mistris, that will constrain you to do greater matters, for she shall ravish both your heart and liberty in such manner, that you should lose overmuch, if at sometimes you lose not your self for her. And to conclude, I tell you that my mistris feeleth her self as yet so much bound, and beholding to my Lord Amadis your father, because that by his means, she recovered her friend, that during her life she wil use al the means she can to do him pleasure, and you likewise for his sake. And as she delibered the message unto him, Carmelle came thither, and hearing her speak in that manner, answered her and said, Gentlewoman, I pray you tell your mistris from me, that she hath great cause to recompence them well, by whom she enjoyed her friend she loveth so entirely: and tell her I know many, to whom if such chance should happen, that would not fail to acknowledge it with the price of their dearest blood, and their souls likewise if need were. In faith (said the gentlewoman) I knot not in whose behalf you speak it, but I know assuredly you touch me at the quick, which she uttered with so good a grace, that the king could not refrain to smile, having in times past felt the fury of love, when he first saw the Queen in the country of Denmark. Yet he changed his countenance, asking the Gentlewoman from whence that musick came that he heard in the morning before break of day. My lord (said she) being sometimes in greater passions then willingly I would, I pass my melancholly humors with a Lute that I have, especially when I cannot sleep, which as I think, was it you heard. What company have you in the Serpent (said the King?) None (said she) but Esplandians Squire, that I found in a manner dead, for the desire he had to hear news of his master, to whom also I have brought the goodliest white horse, and the best harnaised that ever was seen, which my mistris sendeth him likewise. Did she command you to say nothing else unto me (said the King?) Yes my lord (said she) she sendeth you word, that at my arrival here, you and he should enter into this ship, that of it self will bring you into great Britain, and that the fortunes ℔ not long since happened unto you, are snares the world setteth to intrap those it seeketh to deceive, seeming to joyn green and flourishing age with that which already is dryed

up and withered. And further willeth you to put in effect, that which in your self you have determined (I do:) which was to forsake his Kingly estate, and live a solitary life) but he wondered much that Urganda knew it, yet he made no shew thereof, but speaking to the Gentlewoman, he said, Your mistris bindeth me daily more and more unto her, being well assured, that without her help I could hardly have found any to have brought me into my country. Wherefore I pray you tell her, that whatsoever I have, is at her commandment, and as touching my determination, which (as soon as I conceited in my minde, I perceived it was known to her) being at home, if God giveth me life, I mean to put in execution. My Lord (said she) she prayeth you to commend the keeping of this Castle to Talanque and Ambor, (not taking any with you but Esplandian, Sergil and master Elizabeth) knowing for certain that hereafter they shall do such things, that their renown will spread throughout the world. Wherewith my Lord I will take my leave, and return again to her with the dumb men, that shall guide me in this little Barque. God have you in his keeping (said the King.) Then the Gentlewoman with her two Marriners entered into the Barque that brought Esplandian thither, and setting sayl put to Sea.

CHAP. XIII.

How King *Luisart* imbarqued himself in the great Serpent, and of the message *Esplandian* sent by *Carmelle* unto the Princess *Leonorine*, daughter to the Emperor of *Constantinople*.

THe Gentlewoman that brought the message with the two dumb men, imbarqued and put to Sea, far from the Rock: King Luisart and the rest went unto the Castle, where he staied not long, for according to the advice Urganda had given him, he desired Ambor and Talanque, with Libee and the rest of the company to keep the Castle, promising with all speed to send them provision of all things necessary, whereof they wanted. But when Esplandian saw there was no remedy, but of force he must obey the King (much displeased to depart so far from the borders

borders of Conſtantinople, where he hoped to finde her whereof maſter Elizabeth had brought him the firſt newes) he took his faithful ſervant Carmelle aſide, and ſaid unto her: My good friend, I was in mind never to falſifie the promiſe I have made you, nor the gift you required at my hands, nevertheleſs, truſting more in you then any other, I pray you take it not in evil part, if (to ſave my life) I ſend you to a place, whither I thought to have gone my ſelf in perſon, but it pleaſeth the King (as you well know) that I ſhall bear him company. My Lord (ſaid ſhe) I moſt humbly thank you for the honor it pleaſeth you to ſhew me, ſwearing unto you by the living God, that I take no pleaſure but in fulfilling your deſire, wherefore I pray you fear not to command me what you think good, for whatſoever may happen thereby, I will be obedient unto you during my life. My good friend (ſaid Eſplandian) imbracing her, I will one day recompence your good will, and ſeeing you are minded to do me ſo much favor, you muſt then take your journey to Conſtantinople, on meſſage to the Princeſs Leonorine, the Emperors daughter, to whom (having preſented my moſt humble and harty commendations) you ſhall on my behalf ſay, How that at ſuch time as I received the order of Knighthood, I was commanded by my lord Amadis my father to repair to her fathers court, there to diſcharge him of the promiſe he made unto her (which was either to return again to do her ſervice, or to ſend one of his linage thither in his place) Nevertheleſs, conſidering with my ſelf his great valor and prowes, and the great beauty that is reported to be in her, which my ſmall deſert in reward of him that gave me the commandment, I am afraid to undertake the ſame. Notwithſtanding, it hath pleaſed her (by maſter Elizabeth) to put me in minde thereof, although while breath is in my body I will never fail to be her Knight: And to the end ſhe may give credit to your meſſage, you ſhall preſent this ring unto her, which ſhe knoweth well, as being the ſame ſhe gave unto my father, to put him in remembrance of his promiſe. My Lord (ſaid ſhe) I will fulfil your commandment, but if you go ſo far from hence, where ſhall I finde you, when I come back again? In this place (ſaid Eſplandian) whither I will return as ſoon as I have

ꝛought the King into great Brittain. Then calling Libee, he ommanded him, that pꝛesently after he had set sayl, he should cause a ship to be pꝛepared foꝛ Carmelle, to go on message where he should send her, that done, he went to finde the king and maſter Elizabeth, that staꝛed foꝛ him in the Serpent, the which pꝛesently upon his entring therein, of her self began to set foꝛwards with such speed, that in shoꝛt space they left the coast of Turky, and the twentieth day after, they discovered ꝑ Ferm Isle, where she stayed, which those of ꝑ countꝛy perceiving, advertised Amadis and the rest of the company, who in great haste ran unto the Haven, but they were no sooner come thither, when they espyed the King, Esplandian, maſter Elizabeth, and Sergil, landing out of a little boat. Wherewith being all abashed, but much moꝛe pleased stepped foꝛwards to receive them, & after many imbꝛacings and salutations on either part, Amadis pꝛesented the Giant Balan to the King, whom as yet he had neber seen, and therewith set foꝛward towards the pallace of Apolidon, where Oriane and the rest of the Ladies having intelligence, the great soꝛrow that so long time they had used foꝛ his absence, was conberted into joy, which much moꝛe increased, when the king in pꝛesence of them all, rehearsed the manner how Esplandian delibered him out of Arcabonnes hands, and the great pꝛowess he shewed against Matroco, Frerion, and Arcalaus their uncle. Oriane knew well the great desire and much grief the Quéen had, because she heard no news of the King, wherefoꝛe the same day she sent her Danish Gentlewoman to advertise her of his arrival, who made such haste, that within six days after she arribed at London, at such time the Quéen sat down to dinner.

CHAP. XIIII.

How King *Luisart* departed from the Ferm Isle, accompanied of divers Knights, Ladies, and Gentlewomen, and being neer *London*, in a foreſt they met four Knights, that sent to ask four courses with their launces against *Esplandian*.

Thꝛée days King Luisart continued in the Ferm Isle, and the fourth day he determinded to go sée the Quéen, and to the same end, with all that company of Knights, Ladies, & Gentlewomen,

women, he set forwards towards London, and travelled so fast, that they were within a days journey of the City. And as they entred into a forrest, where they used commonly to chase ỳ Hart, they saw in the high way four knights, well mounted & armed at all points, each his Squire by his side, bearing their shield and launces, for they had their helmets on their heads. And with that they perceived a Gentlewoman coming towards them, riding on a palfrey, and being nèer them, speaking to Esplandian, she said, Sir knight with the white arms, those four knights you see in the high way before you, send you word by me, that they would gladly know the cause why you bear the device of crowns, wherein if you satisfie their desire, in such sort that their honors be not stained, they will from henceforth refrain to inquire the same any more: otherwise, they give you by me to understand, it were best for you to leave them, or else that you defend them well, as being the most honorable devise that is in all the world. When Esplandian heard her speak in that manner, in courteous sort he answered her, and said, Gentlewoman, to satisfie their request I pray you tell them that the devise and the arms I bear was given me by Urganda, but for what cause I know not, nevertheless I bear them for the love of her, as also that they like me well: and if this content them not, tell them, me thinketh the occasion of combate betwèen me and them is so small, that for this time I would desire them to forbear the same. In good faith (said she) smiling, you speak with reason, for they are Knights that sèem to have much nèed of your councel, but notwithstanding good sir, I pray you be not unprovided, for your excuses will not be received. Gentlewoman (said Esplandian) if they assayl me, it shall be against my will. Truly (said she) as far as I perceive, the great beauty that is in you, together with the rich arms and goodly horse you ride upon, are worse bestowed then ever was any, when you are not ashamed to make an answer so little to your credit. Nevertheless, either you must forsake the way to London, and this good company, or defend the brave devise you bear, as they have sent you word. The way (said Esplandian) is common to all men, and out of it (for them) I will not go, wherefore if they assayl me, I must of force defend my self. And because the

Gentle-

Gentlewoman was not known among them, they all mused who she might be, as also who the four Knights were that sent her, to whom she returned again. Mean time Esplandian laced on his Helmet, taking his Launce in his hand, ready to fight if occasion served. Wherewith Amadis and the rest of the company were exceeding glad, doubting lest the King had spoken in favor of him, when he shewed what he had done, but they had not ridden long, but one of the four Knights came riding softly towards them, and about a careers length from them, calling to Esplandian and said, You sir Knight that would not satisfie our desires, defend your self from me. Wherewith he set spurs to his horse and Esplandian likewise, who at the first encounter cast him so strongly out of his saddle, that in long time after he could not rise again, therewith his launce brake: with that the second Knight came forwards, willing Esplandian to take another launce, for he meant to revenge his companion. Which Amadis hearing, sent him his launce, that he willingly received, and being in a rage to see himself assayled without cause, he ran against the knight & brake him so surely on the breast, that he overthrew him both horse and man. Well (said the king) to the standers by, judge you if it be possible to do better? My Lord (said Agraies) I never saw two fairer strokes given with a launce, the rest I will leave to consider of till I know those that ran against him. Let us see the end (said the king) and calling a Squire, he sent his launce unto Esplandian, for as then the third kinght prepared himself to run, and spurring their horses, set forwards so fiercely, that breaking their launces, they met so strongly, body and shields, and heads together, that Esplandian had much ado to sit upon his horse, and the other had such a fall, that he lay still upon the ground. Whereat the fourth knight being abashed, said unto himself, Truly, both the king and Urganda have good reason (as they do) to assure the valor and prowess of this knight, seeing it it much more then they warrant it to be: Nevertheless, I must of force try him, otherwise I should do both my self and him wrong. And with that he called Esplandian and said, Knight, although I well know the small courtesie that I and my companions have shewed unto you, yet I must not refuse

fuſe to do the ſame that they habe done beſoꝛe me, wheꝛefoꝛe I pꝛay you ſend to ſome of your company foꝛ another launce, that we may ſée who ſhall bear the honoꝛ of this enterpꝛiſe. I will do it (ſaid he) ſéeing you conſtrain me thereunto, upon condition that if I can, I will ſerbe you in the like ſoꝛt I habe done your companions. With that Granſador that heard them ſpeak, gabe him his launce, which he pꝛeſently charging, they met together with ſuch foꝛce, that their launces bꝛake cloſe unto their hands, neither of them ren obing out his ſaddle, wherefore the Knight of the foꝛreſt turned to Eſplandian and ſaid, Sir Knight, let us yet try one blow moꝛe, and I will cuire you foꝛ this time. You might content your ſelf (ſaid he) with that is done, but ſéeing you are ſo boid of reaſon, I am content to try it with you, till one of us be beaten off his hoꝛſe. Then he ſent Sergil to fetch another launce, and he bꝛought him one ſomewhat bigger and ſhoꝛter then thoſe he had beſoꝛe, wherewith he ſtroke the Knight of the foꝛreſt ſo baliantly, that he oberthꝛew him, himſelf being conſtrained to imbꝛace his hoꝛſe about the neck, oꝛ elſe he had fallen as the other did that lay on the ground, yet he roſe beſoꝛe Eſplandian had run out his courſe and as he returned back, he ſtayed him by the armoꝛ and ſaid unto him, Beſoꝛe God ſir Knight, you habe ſufficiently ſhewed that in baloꝛ and pꝛoweſs you are ſecond to none but to your ſelf: but he anſwered not a woꝛd, but holding down his head (aſhamed of that had happened unto him) paſſed foꝛth. With that the King came thither to know what Knights they were that had béen oberthꝛown, among the which he knew Galaor, foꝛ he had put off his Helmet to do him honoꝛ when he ſaw him come, whereat the King was ſo well pleaſed, that he alighted off his hoꝛſe and ran to imbꝛace him, the like did Amadis, ſaying unto him, with a ſmiling countenance, How now bꝛother Galaor, how long habe you uſed to be a kéeper of the high ways? You ſée (ſaid he) that I and my companions habe ſought to try whether this Knight be of ſuch fꝛoce as we habe found him, and what harh happened you may well judge. When Eſplandian underſtood his uncle Galaor (fearing to habe offended) he lighted off his hoꝛſe, and kneeling down beſoꝛe him, asked pardon foꝛ his fault. Nephew

(ſaid

(said he) it is I that have done the wrong, and therefore I told the king that you are a better knight then I, and marvel not if I sought to prove it, because I thought to do it with mine honor, but I found the contrary, which from henceforth shall make me think the things foreshewed of you will be accomplished so well, that the glory of your father, and the reputation by many knights in times past obtained, shall from henceforth be extinguished, you having so easily overthrown three of the best knights in Great Brittain, and my self the fourth. What are they (said the king?) My Lord (said Galaor) the first that ran was Sendale of Gonaste, the second Galuanes, the third Angriote d'estrauaux, and my self hath done worse then they. Whereat the king and all the company began to laugh, and embracing them, caused them to mount on horseback, riding towards London, where in the way the king prayed them to tell him how this enterprize was devised. My Lord (said Galaor) having understood by the Danish Gentlewoman (that my Lady Oriane not long since sent unto the Queen, to bring her news of your return, and what had happened unto you during your imprisonment) the valiant acts by you declared of my Nephew Esplandain, we conceived such a jealousie against him, esteeming the honor you did him thereby, to proceed rather of fatherly love then otherwise, that we determined secretly to depart out of London to prove his force, as now you have well seen: and to move him thereunto, we sent the Gentlewoman with the message you have heard. Of my faith (said the king) the device was good, and hath fallen out well In this maner devising of sundry things, he came to Mirefleur, where the Queen met him, praising God for his unexpected return, and considering his trouble past, with the grief she had for his long absence, seeing him there safe and in good health, she thought her self well recompenced with his presence. The next day in the morning they set forwards towards London, where the people wept for joy to see him, for there was never Prince better loved of his subjects than he. Being there, Esplandian began to be weary of the place, longing to hear news of Carmelle, that he had sent to Constantinople, as you have heard before. And therefore every day he devised means to get licence to depart from

thence,

thence, pretending a cause of returning to the Castle called the defended mountain, shewing the king what promise he had made to his Companions, which if he did not perform, they should have cause to complain of him, but the king would not in any sort grant to his request, yet in the end, obercome with much importunity, he was content, wherewith he took his leave of all the Court; and upon a munday in the morning taking horse, accompanied onely of master Elizabeth, and Sergil his Squire, he took his way towards the Ferme Isle, hoping to finde the great Serpent there, wherein they might imbarque themselves.

CHAP. XV.

How *Esplandian* riding towards the *Ferm Isle*, was assayled by a strange Knight that watched him in the Forrest.

ESplandian departed from the king, and having taken his leave of all the Court, as you heard before, took the crookedest way he could, through woods and forrests towards the Ferm Isle, thinking not to be perceived of any, that might hinder his enterprize. And having ridden three miles, he entred into a Forrest, which having almost passed, he came unto a great river whereupon the king had built a house, called Bellerose, where oftentimes being on hunting, he used to resort. And as he thought to pass the Bridge, he perceived on the other side a Knight armed at all points ready to fight, that cried unto him with a loud voice, and said: Sir knight, you must ask me leave if you will come ober, for according to my promise, I have taken upon me to keep this bridge for the space of one whole year, wherefore if you think good, you may take some other way. With that Esplandian was much griebed, perceiving that either of force he must fight, or seek another passage, wherefore he would willingly have excused him, and said: Sir knight, I pray you then shew me which way I were best to go, for by me you shall have no cause at this time to trouble your self. You must return again to London (said he) for other passage there is none, unless you will loose your horse, and go on foot. Rather then I would do so (said Esplandian) I will prove if I can win yours,

and therewith lacing his helmet, took his launce and road unto the Knight, who no sooner perceived him coming, but setting spurs to his horse, ran towards him, whereby they met so fiercely together, that both the knights fell off their horses, in such manner, that master Elizabeth and Sergil, thought verily they had slain each other, but they stayed not long before they rose again, and laying hand on their swords, there began between them the cruelest and most dangerous battel that ever was seen: whereat master Elizabeth much abashed, said unto himself, God God, what may this mean. I believe for certain that some devil of hell hath transformed himself into humane shape, to destroy us all. Mean time the two Knights continued in most cruel fight, still increasing their mights, cleaving shields and armors, in such sort, that all the field was covered with pieces of the harness, and dyed with blood that issued from their bodies, till at the last knight of the bridge stept back and said unto Esplandian, Sir Knight, take another way, and I am content to quite you of combate, for you are the baliantest knight that ever I dealt withal, and it should displease me much, if by your wilfulness you would be cause of your own death. In good faith (said he) I had done it at the first, had it not been the fear I had, that you would esteem me a coward, but knowing very well that the honor of this combate cannot be had, but onely by the death of one of us, or both together, I will try my fortune, till I be no longer able to weld a sword. Is that true (said the knight?) Then let us see to whom fortune will be favorable And therewith covering themselves with that little of their shields that rested in their hands, they began the combate crueller then before, and though all the day they had not given a stroke, so that after many cruel blows with their swords, they closed together, & wrastling long time, they sought to cast each other to the ground. But seeing the little advantage gotten thereby, they began again to lay on with their swords with such fury, that Sergil looked for no other but when they should fall dead upon the ground, not being able to judge who would have the victory. Whereat master Elizabeth was so much displeased, that he could not abstain from weeping, saying unto himself, Alas what fortune is this, must

the

the best Knight living in the world, and in the flower of his age loss his life at that time by so hard a chance? Cursed be the day that ever he met with him, that is the cause of so great loss. And to say truth, if God had not provided for them, the father had slain the son, and the son the father, for the Knight of the bridge was Amadis De Gaule, who being over curious of his sons glory would prove his force, and the better to do it, the day before Esplandian took his leave, he departed secretly from the Court, and stayed for him at the bridge, bearing an unknown armor, where after many attempts on either part given, Amadis perceiving both their dangers, said unto Esplandian: Knight, you see well you cannot overcome me, and I assure you, I never had to do with any Knight, that ever put me to so great extreamity, wherefore I am content to let you pass. But not I you (said he) unless you tell me your name. I will not deny you that (said Amadis) wherefore cause master Elizabeth to come hither, for I think we have both need of his help. Then Esplandian called him unto them, mean time Aamdis put off his helmet, so faint and weary, that he was constrained to lean unto a tree. But when Esplandian knew him, and perceiving the fault he had committed, he cast forth a great cry, and said: Alas wicked wretch that I am, and therewith he fell upon the ground, whereat master Elizabeth and Amadis thinking him to be in a swoon, ran to lift him up, but it was not so, onely that it grieved him he had dealt in such manner with his father, who said unto him, Son, although I am as sore wounded as possible may be, without death, yet have I not received so much hurt, as conceived pleasure, perceiving the valor I find to be in you, wherefore be not discomforted. Notwithstanding he could not content himself, but cursed his own life, being (as he said) the most unhappy man that ever was born of woman. And continuing in that grief, y blood in divers places ran out of his body, whereby he waxed faint, which master Elizabeth perceiving, and knowing assuredly, if remedy were not speedily had, they were both in danger of their lives, he said unto them: I pray you for this time leave off your sorrow, and let us presently go to Mirefleur, not far from hence, for you both have greater need of rest, then of longer staying in

this place, wherewith he and Sergil set them on their horses, and with great pain brought them to the castle, where their wounds were dressed. Such was the combate between the two Knights as you have heard, yet some write, that Amadis was so wounded by Esplandian, that in the end with a thrust of a launce into the right shoulder, and other blows with his Sword, he was slain in the field, which Oriane hearing, threw her self out of a window, and brake her neck. But it is not true, for they raigned after that both in France and great Britain, and had another Son named Perion, and a Daughter no less beautiful then her Mother, that marryed Arquisil Son to the Emperor of Rome. But I cannot conceive from whence these lyars could invent such a thing, if they understand not by (death) the shadows that Esplandian caused his fathers baliant acts to be covered withal, by the light & pleasant shining of his own, whereby his fathers were so much had in oblivion, that there was no more brute of them, then if they had never been done. But to return again unto our matter, you must note that news went presently unto the court, what had chanced to the two knights. Wherewith the King & Oriane much displeased, departed from London, & came to Mirefleur, when master Elizabeth began the second time to dress their wounds Whereby he perceived them out of danger, and cured them so well, that within seven days after they could walk about the Chamber, which put Oriane in better comfort then before, and it fell out well for her, for if her melancholy had longer indured she had for certain died at that time. And because the King had not as yet understood the reason that moved them to fight, one day when he found Amadis in good disposition, he prayed him to tell him. In faith my lord (said he) I was desirous to have the difference of our two forces known, being assured, that whatsoever chanced thereby, it could not be but to mine honor: for if my son be a better Knight then my self, his honor for the present time, will increase my glory past. Before God (said the King) your enterprise was but rashly undertaken, I pray you another time let us leave such youthful parts for those that are but entring into arms. Believe me, and it pleaseth your Grace (said he) I was never better beaten in all my life. It

is

is no matter (said the King) seeing you have both escaped with your lives, now seek means to be healed of your wounds with as much speed as you may, and from henceforth let us war onely against Harts and other wild beasts that are within this forrest, as my huntsmen have shewed me this day.

CHAP. XVI.

How the King of *Denmark*, *Garinter*, and *Manely*, succoured *Urganda*, that certain Knights would have slain, because she aided the Emperors Son of *Rome*.

YOu heard before of the adventures of Esplandian, Ambor and Talanque, after they had received the order of Knighthood, now you shall hear what became of Garinter King of Denmark, and Manely. who sleeping as others did by the sound of six trumpets that played on the shore, the next night they found themselves with their Squires in a little Barque, so far out of all knowledge, that although they had landed they knew not where they were, and it was so dark, that they could not see each other, till at the last they perceived a fire not far from thence, that moved them to go thither, to see if they could find any that would shew them in what country they were, therefore leaving their Squires to keep their Barque, they took their shields, and mounting up a little hill, they perceived a fire burning circle wise, in the middle whereof they saw a woman holding a yong childe in her arms, & about the fire stood ten knights all armed, that sought to take her, but by no means they could come neer her, she was so well defended by the fire. And as they went nearer unto it, they heard one among the rest that said unto her, Ha, thou false and accursed wretch, thy devillish spirits and familiars can now no longer help thee, but at this time thou shalt surely die. And although Manely and Garinter had their helmets on their heads, yet the woman they so threatned, knew them well, calling them and said: Help me my sons, and fail me not I pray you at this time: With that Manely and the King of Denmark knew her by her voice, wherefore laying hands on their swords, they marched towards the ten Knights, whereof one of them stepped be-

before the reſt, asking them if they knew that wicked woman that had done him the greateſt miſchief that ever was. By God ſir Knight (ſaid Manely) you lie in your throat, ſhe is not wicked, but faithfuller for her part, then you for yours. Wherewith they ran each upon other, and there began the combate of ten Knights againſt two, and although the match was not equal, Manely and the King of Denmark ſetting their backs together, laid baliantly upon them, yet in the end they could not have reſiſted, but Urganda playing her part, put out the fire, and taking her two knights aſide, left the reſt in the dark, ſtriking each other as if Manely and the king of Denmark had been with them. Mean time Urganda and her company got into the thicket of the wood, and having travelled long, at the laſt the moon began to ſhine, when they were weary, whereby they determined to ſtay a while and reſt themſelves till day appeared. Mean time the two knights deſired Urganda to ſhew them how ſhe came thither, and whether ſhe knew the country. My good friends (ſaid ſhe) having long ſince learned by my art, that this little child ſon to the Emperor of Rome, and of the Empreſs Leonor his wife, ſhould be ſtollen away by the Traitor that aſſayled you, who is Son to Garadan, that Amadis (as then called the Knight of the green Sword) put to death in the country of Bohemia, in defending the right of King Caſimor, as ſoon as you fell on ſleep in the great Serpent, I made all the haſte I could unto this place to ſuccor it, according to my promiſe made (being in the Ferm Iſle) in preſence of Amadis and divers others Knights, where I arrived at ſo good a time when the villains which you ſaw, came to a ſhepheards houſe, where a poor nurſe dwelt, to whom they delibered this little child to give it ſuck. And ſeeing it was time to put my enterpriſe in practiſe, I went out of my Barque, and making as if I had been robbed by certain thieves, ran towards them, crying out and weeping bitterly, wherewith they all came forth to ſee what it might be, and perceiving me in that manner asked the cauſe of my grief. Ha my lords (ſaid I) it is ſo, that as my husband & I paſſed through this wood, we met eight thieves, that ſlew him, and not content therewith, have taken away my horſe and my budget, wherein there is a great ſum of money.

Which

which they believing to be true (not that they were moved with compassion for my loss) but respecting their own particular benefit, hoping to get a Booty by them that had robbed me, scattered themselves in companies to find them out, where they stayed so long, that the shepheard and his wife went out of the house, and thinking to have their parts, left me alone with the childe, that not long after I took in mine arms, and went away. But as it fell out, the nurse came in, and missing the child, called to them for help, who running in great haste, followed me so fast, (that had it not bin for night that overtook them) and the great fire you found about me) I had never escaped their hands. And what would they have done with this poor infant (said Manley?) You shall understand (said she) that the Son of Garadan having conceived a mortal hatred against the Emperor, either because he could not have the Entertainment he thought he had deserved, or else grieved (as I think) that he could not attain unto the Empire, as he pretended: determined not onely to revenge himself upon this little childe, but to kill the Emperor likewise if ever he have the means. By God (said the king of Denmark) he is a wicked and cruel-hearted man, but assure your self that God will not permit it to be so. Nevertheless I am in doubt this childe will endure much woe, seeing you have no means to give it suck. Let me alone with that (said Urganda) for I have certain herbs about me, with the juice whereof I will nourish it, if need be, eight days together. What (said he) will you then stay here so long? No (said Urganda) for as soon as it is day I will return unto my Boat that stayeth here at the shoar. But Madam (said they) what shall become of us, for we are arrived here, not knowing who brought us hither? But for Gods sake, if you have heard any news of our Companions, let us know it, and where we may go to finde them. My friends (said she) you must first let destiny have his course, and endure many hard adventures, & when time serveth you shall have your desires. And in that manner sometimes talking and sometimes sleeping, they passed the time away till day began to appear, when they three together went to the Sea-side, where they entred into Urgandas Boat, wherein four Gentlewomen and two Dwarfs stayed for her.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

How *Urganda* departed from the two Knights, and being guarded by two Dragons, went unto the Emperors Court, to deliver them their young Son, for the loſs whereof all the Court was in an uproar.

FOr a time Urganda ſtayed with the two Knights, not minding preſently to eaſe the Emperors minde with the recovery of his Son, in the end ſhe cauſed them to return unto their Barque, willing them from that time forwards to arm themſelves againſt the aſſaults of fortune, although ſhe ſeemed never ſo variable and unconſtant. For (ſaid ſhe) therefore was the Order of Knighthood inſtituted and appointed, that thereby it might appear more excellent. And they were no ſooner departed, but ſhe ſet foot on land, and mounted on a palfrey with the childe in her lap, ſhe rode forward, with two Dragons to guard her, one upon her right hand, the other upon the left, that bare her company till ſhe came to Triol, where the Emperor held his Court. And approaching the Town, ſhe met great companies of knights that went to ſeek the childe, who ſeeing thoſe horrible beaſts caſting fire out of their mouthes, for fear they began to flie, whereat Urganda ſmiled. At laſt Floreſtan King of Sardinia coming that way, (having ridden a great compaſs about to purſue Garadans ſon) and returning as then all weary and ſore travelled, with his horſe tyred, perceiving the people to run ſo faſt, asked them the cauſe, wherewith they ſhewed him a far off what they had ſeen: but he not abaſhed, went towards the Dragons, thinking if it were poſſible, to fight with them, and as he came nearer unto them, he knew Urganda, and ſpurring his horſe, he thought to ſalute her, but the more he pricked him forwards, the more the horſe gave back, whereby he was conſtrained to light down, and ſaluting her, he took her by the hand, but the Dragons baniſhed away, whereat he was abaſhed, which Urganda perceiving, ſaid unto him, In faith Sir knight, they have good cauſe to give you place, knowing well the magnanimity of your inbincible courage. And for my part, I eſteem my ſelf better

ter

ter guarded (being in your company) then I did before, wherefore I pray you leave me not, till I have delivered this childe unto his mother, which I have recovered from the villains that had stollen it from her. Is it possible Madam (said Floreſtan) that the Emperor should receive so great a pleasure by your means? Shew me I pray you (if it pleaseth you) how you procured the same? You shall know it (said she) when time serveth, till then content your self, and mounting on horse-back, I pray you bring me to the City of Triol. With that they rode together till they came to the Emperors Court, where they found the Empress half dead with sorrow, but when she heard the good news Urganda brought, her sorrow turned to exceeding joy. And for that the Emperor being armed, was ridden out to seek the childe, as others did, she sent men on all sides to certifie him thereof; he having intelligence, thanked God with all his heart, and turned back to see Urganda, that told him in what manner she found the childe, as you have heard before. Where we leave her, and return to shew you of Manley and the King of Denmark, who in the mean time were at Sea in so horrible a tempest, that they thought to have been drowned.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the strange adventures that the King of *Denmark* and *Manley* had, after they departed from *Urganda*, and what pastime they had with two great Apes in an Island, where by chance they arrived.

After the King of Denmark and Manley departed from Urganda, they entred into their Barque, where their two Squires staied for them, and so imbarqued, presently hoised sayl, and put to sea, the weather very peaceable & calm: but they had not sayled long, when a contrary wind began to rise, wherewith the waters grew so high, and the sea began to swell so big, y^t one while it seemed to mount to the skies, & again to descend as low as ye bottomless pit of hell, wherby their little barque was often-tentimes covered with water, having neither Mast, Sail, nor Cable, but all rent in pieces. And that which abashed them most

was, that night coming upon them, it was so dark, they could not see the length of their boat, in which tenement they continued for the space of thirty days together, till at the length it cast them upon an Island, where (being arrived about Sun-setting) they landed. Then commanding one of their Squires to keep their boat, being armed at all points, they went into the Island to see if they could finde any fresh water, or other victuals, for they had not sufficient in their barque to serve them for a week: at the last they found a goodly fountain, shadowed with many great trees, whereby they sat them down, and putting off their helmets for to drink, Argenton their Squire that was with them, said unto them: if you think good, you shall stay here while I go up this high rock, where (it may be) I shall find a house, or some countrey man that will shew us in what place we are arrived. Go (said the King of Denmark) but take heed thou loosest not thy self. With that the Squire left them, and took his way through the wood, but he had not gone a long bowes shot, when he perceived a great Bear coming towards him, wherewith he was in such fear, that with a loud voice he cried out for help, and finding no other remedy, he was constrained to climb into a high tree. The knights hearing their squires cry, supposed he had need of them, and with that they ran in such haste to help him, that forgetting their helmets behind them, left them by the fountain, and they had not run far, but they espied the Bear climbing against the tree, wherein the Squire was defending himself as well as he could, but the beast forsaking her first prey, ran unto Manley, being next unto her, thinking at the first encounter to throw him on the ground, but he stepping aside, gave her such a blow with his sword, that therewith he cut off one of her ears, with a piece of her jaw, but the Bear turned again, and taking him most fiercely about the body, thought to strangle him, wherewith he had almost lost his breath, when the King of Denmark came unto her, and with one blow cut one of her legs clean from the body, whereby the beast in great anguish forsaking her prey, fled into the thicket of the wood, and the King after her, and longer had followed, had it not bin for the weight of his armor, that wearied him overmuch, wherefore returning again unto his com-

companion, they two help their Squire Argenton to come down the tree, who as yet for fear trembled like a leaf, whereat they both began to laugh, Manley asking him if he were acold: no (said he) but I was in the greatest fear that ever I had in all my life, or ever I hope shall have again: and surely I believe there are no other people in this Island, than devils disguised in strange forms, or else such proper Gentlewomen, as she that of late imbraced you so courteously, wherefore I am of this opinion, that for our better security, it were best for us to stay by the fountain, or in our barque till the sea be somewhat pacified. In truth thou sayest well (said the King of Denmark) but in the mean time be thou of a good courage, and fear nothing. I know not what courage I should have, (said he) but I pray you for Gods sake let us be gone, unless you will see me die here. As far as I see (said Manley) thou wilt never die in fight, as long as thou findest means to run away. Not if I may (said Argenton) for if I should, it were done but like a fool. In which manner talking together, they came unto the Fountain, where they espied two old apes casting their helmets (they had left behind them) one at the other, as lightly as if they had bin at Tennise, whereat the two knights & Argenton laughed so heartily, that they were almost overcome with laughter: for the apes had no sooner spied them coming, but in great haste they put the helmets on their heads, and climbing up the trees, skipped from branch to branch, sometimes up and sometimes down, like two tumblers. As God help me (said Manley) I like these apes well, for they knew we were so melancholly on the sea, that they meant to make us merry on land, yet I trust they shall not carry away my Arms without a Combate. Wherewith they took up stones, and threw at them, but they turning about, grinned with their teeth, making mouths and mowes, sometimes scratching their arses. Wherewith the King of Denmark took such pleasure, that he desired Manley and Argenton to let the apes alone, & as then it began to be night Wherefore they sent the squire to fetch his companion, with ȳ rest of the victuals they had in their barque, because the sea rose so high, that they doubted their barque would be cast

on ſhoar, and break in pieces, who ſtayed not long before they came again, and after the knights had eaten of ſuch victuals as they had, they put off their armor, and ſlept till the next morning, when they awaked, finding their helmets lying by them, but not their Armor, for thoſe new men of war had put them on ſo properly, that by their countenances it ſeemed they had ſome great combate to fight one againſt the other, in the top of the high Elms, whereof there were great plenty. But that ſport liked not the two knights, that were loath to die in that place for want of food, but made their account, either to put themſelves again unto the mercy of the waves, or elſe go further into the Iſland to ſeek meat. Wherefore making bows of wood, which they ſtringed with their garters, and cutting arrows to them, ſharp at the points, they ſhot at thoſe woody champions, ſo long, that at the laſt they compelled them to skip down, whereby they took them, and pulled off their armor, which done, they let them go, not doing them any hurt.

CHAP. XIX.

How *Fandalo* the Pyrat ſailing on the Sea, was by tempeſt of weather, caſt upon the Iſland where the King of *Denmark* and *Manely* were, againſt whom he fought, and what happened unto them.

YOu heard before how the King of Denmark and Manely were by fortune caſt upon the Iſle of Apes, where their boat was caſt away, they having not victuals longer then for two days, but God holp them, for the next day as they were upon the top of one of the higheſt rocks, they perceived a ſhip at Sea, which being driven with the wind, not long after was caſt upon the ſhore hard by the place where they were. Wherewith the two Knights went down to ſpeak with them that were aboard, and calling with a loud voice unto them, there appeared a man upon the hatches, that asked them what they would. We pray you in courteſie (ſaid Manely) ſhew us who is the maſter of your Barque: it is (ſaid the man) a great Lord, that before you eſcape, will make you know how he uſeth to handle ſuch youths as

you

you are. And though he do so (said Manely) we are now in such necessity, that it shall please us well to indure the worst that he can do unto us, to be rid out of this hunger which we now indure, and still beginneth to assayl us, wherefore cause us to speak with him, and if it please you, let us know his name. Those that have fallen into his hands (said the man) call him the devil of the Sea, although he is well known by the name of Frandalo, for by his valor he hath brought in subjection the greatest part of all this Sea, pilling and taking all he findeth, and by force of weather hath been constrained to put into this Island, his other vessels being scattered so far abroad, that he can hear no news of them, and the worse for you, considering the rage he now is in. With that there appeared a Squire on the hatches, who seeing the two Knights armed in white, seamed with black croselets, he cryed as loud as he could, and said, My lord, here are they that slew your good cousin Lindoraque. Wherewith there appeared a great Giant, that asked Manely and the King of Denmark why they had so cruelly slain his cousin? By my soul (said one of them) we never saw the man, whatsoever the Squire saith, for I can assure you that since the time we received the order of Knighthood, my companion and I were never in any place, where we have had any great occasion to try our forces. You lie falsely (said he that accused them) I know you better then you think I do, and to justifie the same (said he to Frandalo) the Gentlewoman that you now hold prisoner will satisfie you more. By my great God (said Frandalo) you shall then dearly buy it. You will do no more then you can (said Manely) and for my part I assure you I am well content (seeing you will have it to be so) that you say we have slain your cousin, although it be not so: Nevertheless the glory thereof will redound to us in your behalf: and it may be death to you (said Frandalo.) And therewith caused the Gentlewoman to be called up, who perceiving the Knights armed in like arms Talanque and Ambor had, said: Alas what may this mean? these arms belonged to two Knights, great friends unto my lord and master. For Gods sake Gentlemen, I pray you tell me (said she) how you came by them, for if they of whom I speak were here, they would not leave me long in this captivity. Gentle-

ſlewoman, (ſaid the King) if it pleaſeth you to name them, and that in any ſort we are acquainted with them, whereby the bond of amity, may bind us for their ſakes, aſſure your ſelf we will not fail to do for you the beſt that poſſibly we may. The one (ſaid ſhe) is called Talanque, and the other Ambor, companions to the Knight which I ſerve. Manely hearing that, anſwered her preſently and ſaid: Gentlewoman, tell us I pray you when we de part from hence where we may finde them. My lords (ſaid ſhe) if you can do ſo much with this Giant that he grant me liberty, I will conduct you thither, and ſhew you ſtrange adventures they have done, which I am ſure (if they be your friends) will like you well. With that Manely deſired the Giant Frandalo to gi be the Gentlewoman liberty, but he ſeeing him ſo earneſtly intreat, began to laugh, and ſaid unto him: Before you eſcape out of my hands, it may be her intreaty for you will much more avail with me, then yours for her ſhall do. In the mean time I will provide you both of an honorable eſtate within my Gallies, making you Knights of the order of mine oares, with divers others that have been there long time. You ſpeak at your eaſe (ſaid Manely) being in a place for your advantage, ſo do not we, that expect not any favor either on land or ſea, having neither boat nor victuals to receive us, but if you be the man you boaſt your ſelf to be, either come out to fight with us, or elſe ſend us a boat, and which of us two you chooſe, ſhall come and heal you of the pride, that maketh you ſo hardly know your ſelf: Upon condition nevertheleſs that you alone ſhall fight with him, and as fortune favoreth the combattants, the gentlewoman ſhall go with him that remaineth victor. Content (ſaid Frandalo) although I know full well, I ſhall win but little honor to fight againſt ſuch Jacquies as you are: which he ſaid, in reſpect the eldeſt of the two Knights had not above ſeventeen years of age: wherewith he cal'd for his ſhield, and entring into ỹ Barque he took from the Gentlewoman, went on land, where calling the two Knights unto him, he ſaid: Children, pity your own yong years, and rather yield your ſelves unto me, otherwiſe you are both dead without all remedy. Thou art mad (ſaid Manely) we are yet ſtrong and in good health, and how eſteemeſt thou

us

us to be dead that were neber ſick? In good truth, I hope beforꝛe the cake be parted, to make thée King of the unhappy wꝛetches: Wherefoꝛe chooſe either me oꝛ my companion to fight with thée meantime the other ſhall enter into thy Barque to kéep the gentlewoman thou haſt refuſed me. Alas poꝛ man (ſaid Frandalo) it appeareth well thou knoweſt not what is good foꝛ thée: foꝛ if two of the beſt Knights in all Aſia, had undertaken this combate againſt me, I would make no moꝛe account of them, then a wolf doth of the ſhéep. By reaſon then, you that are ſuch beardleſs boys, what can you look foꝛ at my hands? We look to bꝛeak thy idle head (ſaid Manely.) Truly (ſaid Frandalo) ſéeing thou haſt ſo good a courage, I will gibe thée the honoꝛ to fight with me, foꝛ the laſt that ever thou ſhalt have. And if thou thinkeſt good, ſend thy companion to entertain the Gentlewoman, foꝛ as I ſuppoſe he is better made foꝛ ſuch a matter. With that Manely took the King of Denmark aſide, and ſaid unto him: You have heard Frandalos woꝛds, I pꝛay you grant me the combate, and go you into the ſhip, and as it pleaſeth God to pꝛoſper me, do after what you ſhall think conbenient. The king of Denmark perceibing it in bain to ſtribe, entring pꝛeſently into the boat, wherewith the Giant landed, and with the ſame boarded the ſhip wherein the Gentlewoman was. With that the two knights pꝛepared themſelbes to fight, but befoꝛe any blows ſtriken, Manely ſaid to Frandalo, Giant I pꝛay thée leabe us the Gentlewoman & her Barque, and befoꝛe thou ſpéedeſt woꝛſe, we gibe thée leabe to ſayl where thou thinkeſt good. Art thou afraid already? (ſaid Frandalo.) Ask me mercy, and I will ſabe thy life, otherwiſe be thou aſſured, I wil hang both thée and thy companion upon the top of theſe high trées Defend thy ſelf then (ſaid Manely) wherewith they cobered themſelbes with their ſhields, and began the combate, though (as it ſéemed) far unequal, foꝛ that Frandalo on his mothers ſide iſſued from the ſtrongeſt race of Giants in all Turky, & of his father of the baliánteſt knights in all the woꝛld. And Manley yong & unexpert in arms, baving neber bée n in fight but woben he ſuccoꝛed Urganda, yet the baliant blood of Childadan king of Ireland his father, woꝛought ſuch foꝛce in him, that he had rather die then indure the leaſt ſpot of

diſhonoꝛ,

dishonor, and well perceibed Frandalo he had not to deal with a childe, as he estæmed, but rather a Knight hardy as a Lion, and one that used him in such manner, ỳ his shield being hewed and his armor all unbuckled, at every stroke he drew blood from his body, in such abundance, that the grass was died therewith, whereat those in the ship were much abashed, especially the king of Denmark, that never thought to finde such prowess in his friend Manely, but the Gentlewoman that knew Esplandians force, as likewise theirs she left in the castle on the mountain, seeing Manely and his companion armed in the like arms, made her full account (if they were of the Ferm Isle) Frandalo could not long resist. Wherefore she said to the King of Denmark, In good faith sir knight, I am well assured it will not be long before I be delibered, for Frandalo waxeth very weak, see you not how he beginneth to recoil? You poor slaves (said she) what think you thereof? I think it will be now or never that you must be free. Whereat they all began to look up, perceiving the Giant so weary, that recoiling back, he said unto Manely, Knight, thou art not able to resist me long, wherefore yield thy self, or else thou dyest. I grant the like to thee (said he) if thou wilt deliver us the Gentlewoman and her Barque, with all thou tookest from her, otherwise thou must do better then hitherto thou hast done, if thou mindest not to lose thy head. It is too well guarded (said the Giant) and as he would have spoken more, Manely lifted up his sword, charging him with greater fury then before. Wherewith Frandalo (ashamed to see himself so hardly handled by him whom he made so smal account of) put forth all his strength, in such maner, as at that instant Manely was sore wounded, but the more he felt himself hurt, the greater grew his courage, especially when he felt the blood run within his harness, so that with an accustomed fury, all fear clean laid aside, he set so fiercely on his enemy, that he constrained him to turn his back, running towards the Sea, wherein he waded to the shoulders, and Manely after him, but being lower in stature then the Giant, could not enter so far into the water as the Giant, unless he should have drowned. In the mean time four of the saylers entred into the boat, and with all speed went to fetch him aboard, wherewith

the

the boat, and with all ſpéed went to fetch him aboard, wherewith the ſlaves brake their chains, and with the aid of the King of Denmark ſet upon the Pirate, and others that held Frandalos part: whereof the greater number were thrown into the Sea. Which Frandalo perceiving, thought to ſpéed no better, but he determined by fair means to obtain that, which his force had utterly denyed him. Wherefore with a weak and féeble voice he called to Manely & ſaid: Sir knight, If I have offended, I pray you pardon me, for what I have done to you, was onely in hope to win the praiſe, that ſuch as haunt arms moſt commonly deſire. Wherefore by reaſon you ought to bear with my unhappy fortune, and ſhew ſome courteſie in my behalf, eſpecially for that I am ſo wounded, that my life cannot be long. Frandalo (ſaid Manely) I grant thée thy requeſt, upon condition thou be obedient to my will: which the Giant ſware to do. Then Manely deſired the King of Denmark to take him into the ſhip, and give order to the Surgion to cure his wounds, which done, he prayed him to ſend the Barque again to fetch him aboard.

CHAP. XX.

How the Knights being in *Frandalos* ſhip, (ſtaying for calm weather) deſired the Gentlewoman to ſhew them to whom ſhe appertained, and what ſhe had ſeen done by the Knights whereof ſhe ſpake.

THe combate ended as you heard before, and the Knights aboard Frandalos Ship, ſtaying for calm weather, the King of Denmark ſitting at the foot of his companions bed, (who as then was not fully healed of his wounds) deſired the Gentlewoman to ſhew him where ſhe had ſéen Talanque and Ambor. My Lords (ſaid ſhe) being well aſſured that you are their friends I can certefie you for truth that I left them in good health, and in ſuch a place where they have obtained honor, and had not ſo ſoon forſaken them, if at the commandment of the beſt knight in the world, I had not béen ſent (when Frandalo took me), to Conſtantinople, whether (if it pleaſeth you to bring me) I will there ſhew you what ſtrange things he did, I being préſent:

till then I pray you crabe it not at my hands, otherwise you shall do wrong both to him and me. God forbid we should (said the King:) with that they called him that accused them, Frandalo asking him how he knew them, that he durst affirm a thing unto his master which they neber once so much as thought. The Squire fearing death, fell down at their feet, and shaking like a leaf, said unto them, My Lords, I beseech you be not abashed, if I sought to rebenge my master, that long since was slain by two Knights, wearing the like arms. Where was it (said Manley?) Hard by the place (said the Squire) The defended Mountain, where I found this Gentlewoman speaking to a Knight unarmed, with whom I left her to go unto Matroco and Frerion, but at that instant I understood that a Knight armed all in black had slain them both, and conquered their Castle. For certain (said the King) it was Esplandian, for he wore such armour, and for him onely as I think that victory was reserved. With that the Gentlewoman began to smile, which Manley perceibing, said unto her, Gentlewoman, I charge you by the faith you owe unto the thing you lobe best in all the world, shew us what you know of him. The thing I lobe best in the world (said she) is he of whom you speak, for the rest require it not at my hands, for you hear no more of me before I be in the place where he hath sent me, we will bring you thither the sooner (said the King of Denmark) wherewith he called the Patron of the ship, asking him in what time they might be at Constantinople? if we habe a good winde (said he) I will bring you thither in less then four days. But Frandalo feared that more then any thing in the world, for he had robbed so many of the Emperors subjects, that he looked for no pardon at his hands. Whereupon he desired the two knights rather to cast him into the sea. For (said he) I know, if he once lay hold on me, he will put me to most cruel death: but he shall not (said the king) rather will we die in your defence, for you shall speed no worse then we. Wherewith the Giant thanked them, and as they were debating together, the winde came good, then the Patron caused the ankers to be hoised up, and setting sayl, put to sea, with so prosperous weather, that within four days after about break of the day, they discobered the City of

Con-

Conſtantinople, entring into the Haven. Then the two knights asked the Gentlewoman what ſhe would do. My lords (ſaid ſhe) I have expreſs commandment from my maſter, to ſpeak unto the Emperor and the lady Leonorine his daughter, to whom I pray you let me be conducted, and in their preſence I will ſatisfie your requeſt in that you have deſired at my hands. Wherewith they iſſued out of the Ship, taking Frandalo with them, determining to preſent him to the Princeſs Leonorine, to whom they went (becauſe the Emperor was ridden abroad two miles from thence to chaſe a Hart) and finding one of the Princeſs Squires at the gate, the King of Denmark ſpake unto him and ſaid, companion I pray you tell the Princeſs that I and this knight have brought a ſtrange lady unto her, that if it were her pleaſure would gladly ſpeak with her. With that the Squire went in and ſtaid not long before he came again, leading them into the Princeſs chamber, where they found her in company of Queen Minoreſs, with divers other Ladies and Gentlewomen, but ſhe was eaſie to be known among them, for in beauty ſhe ſurpaſſed them all, Manley and the king of Denmark thinking they had never ſeen a fairer Princeſs, whatſoever men reported of Oriane, Olinde, or lady Briolaine. And as they entred into the chamber, ſhe ſtepped forth to receive them, wherewith they kneeled down to kiſs her hands, the King of Denmark ſpeaking unto her and ſaid: Madam, we are two knights of the Ferm Iſle, that by ſtrange adventure were driven into the Mediteranian Sea, where we expected nothing elſe but death, but in the end having indured a great tempeſt for the ſpace of thirty days, and as many nights together, when our victuals began to fail, we landed in an iſland unhabited, where our veſſel brake in pieces, ſo that we perceiving nothing but death before our eyes (and altogether deſperate of any ſuccor) by fortune the ſhip wherein this knight and this Gentlewoman (pointing to Frandalo and Carmelle) ſayled, was by the ſame tempeſt of weather, caſt upon the Iſle where we not long before had landed, where there happened a marvellous combate between him and my companion, and my ſelf with ſome of his Pirates in the ſhip, who by force I overcame: and my companion was victorious of the Giant. And underſtanding by this

Gentlewoman, that she had a message to deliver unto you from a Knight armed all in black, (whom we sought after) we determined to bring her to your presence, and withal to salute and honor the Emperor your father, in regard of the service that my Lord Amadis oweth unto you, whose singular friends and welwillers we are and always will remain. And for that at this time we have not any thing (besides our selves) more worthy the presenting to your Grace then Frandalo our prisoner, we most humbly beseech you to receive him into your service, and be a means to save his life, as we have promised him. The Princess Leonorine glad of that present, for the renown of the Pirat, being accounted a man of great power and experience, thanked them most heartily, and calling one of her officers, she commanded him to entertain the two Knights in the best manner he could, as also to look unto Frandalo, until the Emperors return, who (said she) will be glad of their arrival, specially to understand by them some news of Amadis, mean time she kept the Gentlewoman with her.

CHAP. XXI.

How *Carmelle* declared her message to the Princess *Leonorine*, and what conference they had touching *Esplandian*.

Therewith the King of Denmark and Manley departed from her presence, the Gentlewoman remaining with the Princess, that led her into her priby chamber, asking her of what place she was, and from whom she brought a message unto her? Madam (said Carmelle) being perswaded that as yet you know not him with whom I serve, I most humbly beseech your Grace to pardon my boldness, if before I name him, I give you to understand, that whereas he is accounted among the ranck of the most valiant Knights living in the world, of whom by reason of his great courtesie and valor he is no less estéemed, then feared & redoubted of all villains y hear him named. Notwithstanding one thing overcometh him and banquisheth his most couragious heart: which is your Grace my goody Lady (said she) whom he loveth, honoreth, and desireth to serve while life indureth.

But

But knowing not if his ſerbice would be accepted of, he durſt not preſume to come himſelf in perſon to offer you the ſame: although (by him that next after your ſelf, may moſt command him) he had expreſs charge to preſent it unto you, as bound thereto by promiſe. And to the end you may gibe credit to my wozds, he ſendeth you this ring, which is the bery ſame you gabe to Amadis, being in this Court, if your Grace can call it to remembzance. With that Leonorine took it in her hand, and beholding it long time, ſhe ſaid unto the Gentlewoman: Truly this ring was ſometimes mine, which I gabe unto the beſt Knight now libing in the wozld. In faith (ſaid the Gentlewoman) a better Knight then he hath ſent it you again, and that is my Lozd Eſplandian his ſon. I neber ſaw him, that I know of (ſaid ſhe: True it is, maſter Elizabeth told me of a yong Gentleman ſon to the Knight with the greén ſwozd, that not long ſince was made Knight in the Ferm Iſle, Urganda being preſent, and the next day was carryed away in a ſtrange ſhip, of whom as then they could bear no newes. Madam (ſaid Carmelle) I know not who the Knight with the greén ſwozd may be, but he whereof I ſhew you, hath had ſuch a beginning in arms, that if it be your pleaſure to hear it, you will be abaſhed thereat: tell it I pray you (ſaid the Princeſs.) But as the Gentlewoman began to ſpeak, one brought the Princeſs news the Emperoz her father was come from hunting, and asked foz her: wherewich ſhe knowing what pleaſure her father would take to bear news, took Carmelle by the hand, and led her into the Emperozs Chamber, and doing reberence unto him, ſhe ſaid: My Lozd, here is a ſtrange Gentlewoman, (that can tell you news of the good Knight with the greén ſwozd, and of his ſon likewiſe, of whom maſter Elizabeth made a long diſcourſe) and ſhe hath bæn conducted hither by two Knights of the Ferm Iſle, whereof one of them hath fought with Frandalo and hath prezented him unto me, and ſtaying your return, I have ſent them, into a chamber to refreſh themſelbes. Daughter (ſaid the Emperoz) both they and the Gentlewoman are moſt heartily welcome: My Lozd (ſaid Carmelle) God preſerbe your grace: and without further honoz unto him, ſhe ſtood ſtill and help her peace,

where-

whereat all the company began to ſmile, thinking that want of civility cauſed her to forget her ſelf. But not long after they changed their opinion, Carmelle beginning to ſpeak in this maner. My Lord, I have been nouriſhed all my life among the beſt Knights living in ỹ world, yet let not your grace find it ſtrange if at the firſt (being in your Majeſties preſence) I have uſed ſo little honor to your Grace, whereby your Gentlewomen ſhuld have cauſe to laugh at me: For that want of underſtanding how to behave my ſelf in preſence of ſo great a Prince, is not the cauſe thereof, but onely the joy I conceive in my ſelf, to be a ſervant unto him, whom I more eſtéem then any man living: and I onely hold for my lord and maſter, not knowing any worthier then he. And if it pleaſeth your Grace to know who it is, together with the cauſe of my arrival in this country, I pray you ſend for the two knights brought ỹ me hither, & I wil ſhew ſuch things, whereat (it may be) your Grace will be abaſhed. Gentlewoman (ſaid the Emperor) you ſhall therein do me great pleaſure. Wherewith he commanded a Gentlewoman to go fetch the two ſtrange knights, who coming into the Emperors preſence, having kiſſed his hands, and he welcomed them in courteous manner, he willed two chairs to be brought, wherein he ſet them, being a Prince that alwaies entertained ſtrangers with great honor, eſpecially if he knew them to be of forrain countries. That done, all the Knights, Gentlewomen, and Ladies went nér to hear the Gentlewomans ſpéech, when ſhe turning unto the Emperor, ſaid in this manner: My Lord, I think your Grace hath long before this time known the Caſtle, called the defended mountain, ỹ which (during the life of valiant Charradaque, and ſince that time) you and the king of Turky have diders times aſſayled to win, although in vain, it hath alwaies béen ſo well defended by the Giants Matroco and Frerion, yet in one day a knight alone hath conquered it, & ſlain the two giants whereof I ſpake, with their uncle Arcalaus and Argantes the Porter of the ſame. And which is more, hath delivered King Luiſart, that lay priſoner therein, no man knowing it, for he had béen ſurpriſed in great Britain, and ſecretly brought from thence by Arcabonne Lady of the Caſtle: The which lady falling in deſpair,

ſpair, threw her ſelf out of a window into the Sea. And to the end your Grace may know how all hath happened: it is ſo (ſaid ſhe) that Arcabonne (who as then I ſerved) having intelligence of her brothers impriſonment in the Ferme Iſle, departed expreſſly from the Caſtle, hoping to deliver him, but before ſhe got thither, he was ſet at liberty. Notwithſtanding (ſhe being loth to loſe her labor) to be revenged thereof, did ſo much by her Art, that ſhe got king Luiſart (as then hunting in the forreſt) into her Tent, the king thinking to ſuccor a Gentlewoman, that as he thought a knight would have deflowred: where he was ſo cruelly inchanted, that loſing all his ſenſes, he was tranſported without any mans knowledge into the dungeon of the Caſtle, where my lord and maſter found him. And continuing her diſcourſe, ſhe ſhewed in what manner Eſplandian was made Knight, and ſeeking to find ſhe king, was carried by the boat of the great Serpent into the Iſle of the Enchantreſs, where he conquered the ſhining ſword, and after that brought in a little barque to the foot of the rock called the defended mountain, the ſpeech he had with the Hermit, the combats with Argantes, Matroco, and Frerion, the deſperateneſs of Arcabonne, the determination ſhe had to kil him, when ſhe found him ſleeping in the hermitage, ſ lobe wherwith ſhe was ſuddenly ſurprized. And laſtly, the means how king Luiſart knew him: for (ſaid ſhe) he is ſon of Amadis his ſon, and of the Princeſs Oriane. And becauſe at his departure from his father he gave him command to come and ſerve the Princeſs Leonorine your daughter, with the other Ladies, according to his promiſe, he hath expreſſly ſent me hither, humbly beſeeching them to pardon the ſlow performance of his fathers will: but to amend his fault committed, he wil ſhortly be here to fulfil his charge as long as they pleaſe. Gentlewoman (ſaid ſ Emperor) I knew his father for one of the beſt knights in the world: notwithſtanding you have ſhewed ſuch ſtrange things of his ſon, that I certainly believe he far ſurpaſſeth him. He ſhall be heartily welcome when he cometh, but if my daughter will follow my counſel, ſhe ſhall not pardon his long abſence till he come in perſon to deſire the ſame: and let him be aſſured he ſhall not depart ſo ſoon from hence as Amadis hath done. At the leaſt, we will make him

ſo

so good cheer, and my Daughter likewise, to whom I give express commandment to do it, that he shall not have occasion to dislike our company. Mean time the two Knights shall remain with us for pledges, assuring you I will give them all the honor and good entertainment that I can devise. My Lord (said she) the desire they have to understand the things declared to your Grace, hath caused them for to come hither, with whom by great good fortune I met, for Frandalo, whom he (pointing to Manley) hath most valiantly conquered, had taken me prisoner, not far off from the place where I first imbarqued: but as fortune would, there arose so great a storm at sea, that all his Vessels separated one from the other, his ship was cast upon an Island, wherein (by the same tempest) these two knights not long before arrived. And with that he shewed what speech they had with Frandalo, and what passed between them: Wherefore my Lord, acquitting my promise made unto them, I have at large declared the Adventures of the good knight their companion. In faith (said the Emperor) they have shewed themselves right valiant knights, and made a worthy present unto my daughter, for which I give them thanks. My Lord (said Manley) we humbly beseech your Grace, that from henceforth you will accept his service, for it is his only desire, as he hath promised us. Is that possible (said the Emperor:) For he is the vildest villain that ever lived on earth, and hath more wronged my subjects then ever any did. My Lord (said the King of Denmark) he will become a new man, and therefore my companion did present him to your daughter, which promised for to save his life, which we beseech your Grace likewise to perform. I am content to do it (said the Emperor) at your requests, though he deserves it not. While they sat talking, Gastilles that stayed in the forrest to look unto the hounds, entred into the Hall, and presently knew Manley and the king of Denmark, having seen them in Great Brittain before they were made Knights, wherewith he asked them when they came thither: and being made acquainted with the Gentlewomans message, he asked her if she knew the names of the other two that stayed in the Castle: for seeing they are armed (said he unto Manley) in the like Arms, it is certain they are of your company. That is

true

true (said the Gentlewoman) for they were all made Knights together, the one called Ambor, the other Talanque. I know them well (said Castilles) for Ambor is the son of Angriote d'estrauaulx, one of the best knights in the Countrey of Great Brittain. In truth (said Manley) we were in great care how to finde them out, but seeing they are in the Castle called The defended mountain, if it pleaseth the Emperor, we will go unto them. I am content (said he) so you promise me not to depart before eight days are past. My Lord (said they) we are at your commandment. Being Dinner time, the Emperor rose up and went into the Hall with the two Knights, and the Princess Leonorine took the Gentlewoman with her, as desirous to hear further news of the Knight Esplandian.

CHAP. XXII.

What passed between the Princess *Leonorine* and *Carmelle*, touching the Message she had brought.

YOu heard before how Carmelle in presence of the Emperor, shewed the great desire she had to slay Esplandian, and when she thought to do it, she was so overcome with love, that during her life she determined not to love any other, which the Princess Leonorine (that already pretended part in him) had not forgotten, but returned with Carmelle into her Chamber: with a smiling countenance she said unto her, Is it possible Gentlewoman (said she) you loving the knight with the black arms so well as you report, that you could leave his company so soon? Madam (said she) I was presently given to understand he loveth another: wherewith I comforted my self, judging his heart like unto mine own, that he could not chuse but sometimes feel the like sweet passion he caused me indure. What hope then resteth (said the Princess) unto you? The same (said she) I know to be far different betwéen him and me, for when I am in presence, beholding the excellency of his person, I then receive some comfort, which to him is utterly denied, seeing that already he endureth for her sake, that as yet he never saw, and that (Madam said she) is your own person, as I said before. Surely (said the Prin-

ceſs) his lobe is very ſtrange, the foundation whereof I cannot well conceibe. Madam (ſaid Carmelle) I fear e're it be long, he will not be able to indure the great extreamity wherein he now is fallen, onely for your ſake eſpecially, if at his arribal here, he finde himſelf rejected of your Grace, having no deſire, but to fulfil your pleaſure, whereby he may account himſelf your own, eſtæming it the greateſt favor that ever he can have. In good faith (ſaid ſhe) I will not refuſe him ſo ſmall a thing, nor a greater, as occaſion ſerves, but I pray you tell me why he calleth himſelf the black Knight. That can I not well do ſaid Carmelle) onely that upon a night as king Luiſart, he, Talanque and Ambor, were all aſlæp in one chamber, they heard ſo pleaſant a ſound of muſick from the ſea, that they roſe out of their beds to hear it, and it was ſo dark they could not ſæ, but when day appeared, they eſpyed the great Serpent at the Haven, whereat they were ſo glad, that deſcending down the hill, they went unto the ſhoar, where they perceibed a Gentlewoman in a little boat coming to land, bearing in her arms a pack covered with blew Taffata: which from her miſtriſs Urganda ſhe præſented to Eſplandian, ſaying unto him, Sir Knight, my miſtriſs ſenderh you theſe arms, and willeth you by me to leabe the ſame ſhe gabe you, when you were in ſadneſs, and to arm your ſelf with theſe, that bear the debiſe of her, which at this day is the beautifulleſt creature living in the world (as Amadis your Father well did witneſs, when he ſet the Crown upon her head.) And for y lobe of her your power and courage ſhall ſo much increaſe, that your renown ſhall ſpread throughout the world, your mind moved with ſo amorous a paſsion, that many times you ſhall deſire death. And opening the packet, ſhe took forth a white armor all ſet with Crowns of gold, inriched with Pearls and Diamonds moſt ſumptuous to behold: which Eſplandian (with hearty thanks unto Urganda and the meſſenger) receibed willingly. This as I think madam (ſaid Carmelle) is the cauſe why he hath bin called the black knight, but I ſuppoſe ſæing he hath changed his debiſe, he will likewiſe change his name. The Princeſs Leonorine knew therebr, that all theſe things were ſaid as touching her, wherewith ſhe felt an alteration in her mind, for that lobe

by

by little and little began to burn her heart, which she had willingly covered, but Carmelle by ỹ changing of her colour, which sometimes waxed pale and sometimes red, the sundry motions wherewith sweet love did prick her tender heart, perceived it full well in such manner, that being no longer able to abstain from sighing, as if he had spoken to her self, she said I pray God this beginning may prove a happy end. Wherewith Carmelle perceiving her masters suite to prosper with effect, the better to increase the desire of the Lady, she said unto her: Madam, he hath commanded me not to stay long here, for till my return he doth continue in exceeding pain, and never shall be free if he receive no comfortable answer from your Grace. Gentlewoman (said the Princess) I were the most ungrateful Princess living on the earth if I should do so, but tell him I pray you from me, that I give him hearty thanks for the courtesies he offereth me by you, and when he once arriveth here, he shall soon know ỹ great good will I bear him. As also that I hold him for my knight, for proof whereof, you shall on my behalf present him with this hairlace, as being the first present that Grimanaise my grandmother gave to his Appolidon, being but her lover. Wherewith taking a cloth of tissue from her hand, she unbound her hair, and delibered the hair lace unto her, and sending for a gown imbroidered all with Crowns of Gold, gave it her likewise. But (said she) because the two Knights have promised the Emperor not to depart from hence till eight dars are past, you shall stay for them, and all together return unto the Castle called the defended mountain, which she willingly granted.

CHAP. XXIII.

How news was brought unto the Emperor, that *Armato* King of *Turky* had besieged the Castle of *the defended Mountain*, and of the charge he gave *Frandalo* with *Manley*, and the King of *Denmark*, to go succor it.

IN manner as you heard before, the two Knights of the Ferm Isle and Carmelle, stayed at Constantinople, where there arrived a certaine Ship, that brought a Squire on

meſſage from Talanque and Ambor to certifie the Emperor, that Armato King of Turky, advertiſed of the death of Matroco had beſieged the Caſtle, the defended mountain both by land and Sea, deſiring him to ſend ſome aid, otherwiſe they ſhould be conſtrained to yield the ſame, not having victuals nor men for to defend it. The Emperor hearing thoſe news, and conſidering the truce between him and the King of Turkes, as alſo that he had not any men prepared for to ſend, neither Gally, Galliace, Ship nor Brigandine ready for the Sea, ſtood ſomewhat in amaze. But conſidering with himſelf of what importance that Frontier Caſtle might be unto him if the enemy ſhould obtain it, he determined by all means to hinder him from the ſame. Wherefore calling for Frandalo, and taking him aſide, he ſaid unto him: Well Frandalo, you are now my priſoner, and it lieth in me either to hang you like a thief, or deliver you with greater riches then ever you poſſeſſed, which I promiſe you to do, if from this time forwards you ſwear to be my loyal ſubject, and faithfully to ſerve me when you are imployed. My Lord (ſaid he) I beſeech you Grace wholly to forget the faults by me committed to your Majeſty, ſwearing of my faith, (if it pleaſeth you to pardon my offence) you ſhall from henceforth finde a ſervant of me, that in time will make you know by effect how much I eſteem this favor at your hands. Will you do it (ſaid the Emperor?) I and it pleaſeth your Grace (ſaid he.) What is become of your Navy (ſaid the Emperor) that in times paſt you held upon the Sea? My Lord (ſaid Frandalo) the windes and tempeſts that lately happened on the ſea, hath ſo ſcattered them, that I can hear no news of them: Nevertheleſs, I am of opinion, they may eaſily be brought together, wherewith I will do your Grace ſervice, if you think good. Do it then (ſaid the Emperor) and that with ſpeed, for I have determined to raiſe the greateſt army that ever hath been ſeen, therewith to drive Armato king of Turky out of the Frontiers of my Empire, whom not long ſince hath beſieged the defended mountain. And while my forces are preparing, you with the two knights that of late came hither, ſhall go before, and uſing meanes to aſſemble your men, ſhall in the mean time give the Turkes ſomewhat to do. My

Lord

Lord(said Frandalo)God give me grace to do you faithful service: then be you ready in the morning(said he)to depart from hence, wherewith he commanded Frandalos ship to be rigged and prepared with al things necessary,and finding Manley and the king of Denmark, he told them that he had received news from Talanque and Ambor touching the castle of the defended mountain, and what he had determined to do as concerning their relief,shewing them what had passed betwéen him and Frandalo touching the same. Wherefore my good friends (said he) because I wel perceive the great desire you have to sée your companions, me thinketh it were good you imbarqued your selves with him, who goeth before to advertise them of the aid I mean to send them. My lord(said Manley) it is our whole desires. In the morning (said the king) you shall have your Barque ready and furnished with all things necessary, and some other of my ships likewise to second you, attending the great army my self doth mean to bring. But before their departure he gave them divers rich presents, which they refused, contenting themselves with the honor and courteous entertainment he had already given them, and taking their leave of all the court, especially of the Princess Leonorine, they took Sea, and Carmelle with them, hoping to have her masters great good will for the good news she brought him. But before we pass further to shew you what became of them,I think it not out of our History to leave Esplandian no longer at Mirefleur, but shew you what became of him, being healed of his wounds.

CHAP. XXIIII.

How *Esplandian* healed of his wounds, took leave of King *Luifart* and all the Court,to go unto the Ferm Isle, where he left the great Serpent, wherein (accompanied onely of master *Elizabeth* and *Sergil)* he imbarqued himself to return unto the Castle of *the defended mountain*.

MAny days and nights did Esplandian staying at Mirefleur, after the dangerous combate betwéen him and Amadis his father, before his wounds were fully healed. But in the end having licence of the king & others that might command him,

he

he took his way towards the Ferm Isle, accompanied of master Elizabeth & Sergil. And travelling without any adventure worth rehearsing, at the last they arrived at the palace of Apolidon, at the foot whereof they found the great Serpent, wherein presently they imbarqued themselves, but she removed not from thence till midnight following, when she began to sayl so swiftly, that the next day they were out of sight of any land, and so continued for seven days together, the eight day they discovered a goodly country, and having a calm wind the Serpent put a shore, which Esplandian perceiving, determined to land and walk along the coast, till he found some one or other that could shew him in what countrey he had arrived. And desiring master Elizabeth not to depart thence before he came again: he, Sergil, and their two horses entred into a little Boat, and taking land, they entred so far into the countrey, that they came to a little hill, at the foot whereof they perceived a goodly meddow, and certain houses, whereunto they went. And they had not ridden far, but a Lacquy that kept four horses, whereof one was a Bay, and greater than the rest, came unto Esplandian, and speaking to him in the Almain tongue, asked him why he went to his own mischief? Esplandian that in his youth had learned that Langnage, asked him wherefore? Because (said the lacquie) that at the next house my master is newly alighted, and is at dinner, and if he see you, you die therefore. Thy master (said Esplandian) And what doth he? He useth (said he) to kill or put in prison far braver fellows than your self: wherefore if you will believe me, you shall return again, if you mean not to speed as I have told you. But Esplandian staying not, passed forward till he came unto the door, where he espied a Giant set at dinner, and four squires all bareheaded waiting on the board. But as soon as the Giant saw him, he rose up, and leaning on the cloth, said unto him: Thou unhappy wretch, who hath sent thee hither in my presence, armed as thou art? By my great god Janos, I must needs say thou art a fool, or else art weary of thy life. Come hither to me, and put off thine Armor, because thou shalt not have so much pain to go on foot to thy lodging that is prepar'd for thee. Forwards you villains, said he unto his squires, throw him off his horse, and carry

him

him to his fellows. Wherewith one of them (thinking to play the diligent servant) ran unto Esplandian, to serve him for a Squire: but (whether Esplandian was offended, or for that he had the left stirrop in stead of the right) he gave him such a blow on the face with his Gantlet, that he felled him to the ground: whereat the Giant was in such a rage, that he scarce had the patience to arm himself to be revenged. Wherefore sending to fetch his great Bay horse, mounted thereon. Mean time Esplandian lacing his helmet, took his sword in hand, staying for his enemy that ceased not to threaten him, who stayed not long before he came, bearing a great lance upon his thigh, and so great a cimiter hanging at his sadle bow, that a strange man would have much ado to list it up. But as you see a Cock holding up his head, and standing ready to receive another Cock wherewith he fighteth, so Esplandian having felt the injury he had received at the giants hands, seeing him approach, began to shake his leg, ready for to charge his enemy. But the Giant called him, and said, Wassail, content thy self with the honor thou hast already gotten, by putting me in so great choler, that without any regard I have taken arms against so vile and wretched a thing as thou art: Flie then from hence without constraining me to do thee any hurt, otherwise thou art most sure of death, for twenty knights hardier then thy self, cannot once remove me. Esplandian bearing his great brags, made no account thereof, but in mockery said unto him, Those thou hast already slain, can never hurt thee, but I that come for to revenge them, hope before that we depart to send thy soul unto the Devil, to whom thou hast commended it so often, although it were much better for thee to take the counsel thou hast given me, and shun thine own misfortune, being well assured, that in thy great mis-shapen body there resteth nothing but a base and servile heart, that causeth thee to speak in such sort as thou doest. That shalt thou presently see (said the Giant) and couching his launce, ran towards Esplandian, who did the like against him: But the Giant missed his blow, so did not Esplandian, for with the force of his blow he made the Giant double his body, in such sort, that his Gaul brake in his body, and ran out at his mouth, wherewith he presently

died.

oied. They that beheld it were thereat abashed, specially the Giants Squires, who presently began to flie, but they had not run far, when Esplandian overtook them, threatning to slay them if they would not shew him the place where their master kept his prisoners, which they promised to do. And leading him along by the foot of the Hill from whence he had descended, they came into a narrow way full of stones where stood a watch of twenty men all armed, each man with a hatchet in his hand to defend the passage: when the captain of that band perceived the Giants squires coming towards them, he asked them where they found that unhappy fellow: and saying so, thought to lay hands upon Esplandians bridle, but with a blow of his sword he cut his arm in sunder, wherewith the rest set all upon him. But in short time he dealt so well among them, that he laid most part of them dead upon the ground. But he had so many men about him, that in the end his horse was slain, and he in danger to be overthrown. Yet he behaved himself so valiantly, and with so great a courage, that he remained Victor, his enemies flying as fast as possibly they might: and among the rest, the lacquy that he found keeping the four horses, who saving himself in a vault, cried with a loud voice, and said, Come forth my Lord, come forth, your son Bramato is slain, and all our companions likewise. With that there appeared a great old Giant with a long white beard, who seeing Esplandian with his sword bloody in his hand, and most of his men lying dead about him, he cast out a great sigh and said, O immortal Gods, wherein have I so much offended you, that you should suffer my onely son, and all my men to be slain in such manner by this one knight? But I hope your wraths will not be so much increased against me, as that you will not give me leave to be revenged on him. And as he uttered these words, being covered with his shield, he went unto Esplandian, and holding his sword in hand, stroke him flatling with the same upon the arm, in such maner that he was astonished: and with the force of the blow the sword sliding down upon a stone, brake in three pieces, wherewith Esplandian stepped to him, and with great dexterity struck him so fiercely on the face, that the blood in great abundance ran out of his forehead. Whereat the Giant was in such a rage, that casting

casting down his Shield, took the piece of his Sword in both his hands, and with all his force stroke at Esplandian that stept aside, and perceiving the Giants arm coming towards him, with one blow cut off his hand, whereby his Sword fell down. Nevertheless he seemed not abashed, but imbracing Esplandian with his left arm, thought to crush the breath out of his body, but it happened otherwise, for as he held him, Esplandian having his right arm at liberty, thrust his Sword into the Giants body, wherewith he died. Then calling Bramatos three Squires that he brought thither to shew him the prisoners, he asked where they were: My Lord said one of them, on that side the vault is the two Giants lodgings that you have slain, and under it are the prisoners that you seek in a most dark prison above a hundred paces long, and but two paces broad, whereby the prisoners (in great number) have no means to rest themselves, being constrained to stand upright for the narrowness of the place. Go before (said Esplandian) with that the Squire went forward, and Esplandian followed after, and they had not gone long, but they entred into a goodly pallace, and going lower, he heard the lamentable voices of the poor prisoners dying for want of food, whereat he took such compassion, that the tears ran down his eyes, asking the Squire for the keyes: There they hang (said he) upon a nail. Open the door (said Esplandian) which he presently did, wherein they entred, and Esplandian calling the poor wretches that lamented, said unto them, My good friends, come all forth, and thank God for your liberties. You may well judge if they were glad to hear those news, for that some of them had remained therein above thirty years together, being in all twenty Gentlewomen, thirty Squires, and fifty Knights, among the which Esplandian knew Grandalin and Lazinde, who by evil fortune (after the conquest of Sansuegue) travelling the country, were met by the Giants, and kept in prison with the rest, where they indured great misery.

CHAP. XXV.

How *Esplandian* commanded the prisoners he had delivered to go unto *Constantinople*, there to thank the Princess *Leonorine* the Emperors Daughter, keeping onely *Gandalin* and *Lazinde* with him.

THe Giants slain, and the prisoners set at liberty, Esplandian that as yet had not taken off his helmet, not long after made himself known to Gandalin and Lazinde, that were no less abashed to see him in so strange a place, then wondered at the great prowess he had shewed for their delivery. It was then about Sunsetting, and Esplandian had neither eat nor drunk of all that day, wherefore he determined not to depart thence till the next day in the morning, for he found great store of victuals in the place: Commanding Sergil with one of the Squires to go seek the Bay horse he left at the house where he slew Bramato, for his own was slain, which they presently brought unto him, passing the night in the Giants house with the best victuals they could finde. The next day in the morning Esplandian called the prisoners that he had delivered, asking them what they meant to do? Sir Knight (said they) we are wholly bent to do as pleaseth you. Then my friends (said he) you shall go to Constantinople, and there give thanks unto the Princess Leonorine for the grace it hath pleased God to give you by means of a knight that belongeth unto her. And if she asketh you my name, tell her onely what manner of arms I bear, shewing her that I willed you to submit your self unto her mercy. In faith (said Gandalin) my companion and I were determined not to leave your company so soon, but seeing it is your pleasure, we are content to do it. You and he (said Esplandian) shall keep me company till you mean to travel further, the rest shall do as I required them. Sir Knight (said he) that shewed him the prison, they shall finde within the house all the furnitures and other things that were taken from them: shew them where they be (said Esplandian.) Whereunto he willingly obeyed, which done, they all left the Giants house, the prisoners taking the way towards

wards Conſtantinople, and Eſplandian with Gandalin and Lazinde, armed at all points, went towards maſter Elizabeth that ſtayed for them in the great Serpent, and as they were about half a mile from the Giants houſe, they met a knight all armed with two ſquires attending on him, who in courteous manner ſaluting Eſplandian and his company, aſking them what country men they were. Sir knight (ſaid Eſplandian) we are all of great Britain. Alas (ſaid he) can you tell me any news touching a thing that hath grieved me full ſore? What is that (ſaid Eſplandian) can you tell me (ſaid he) what is become of King Luiſart? For I have bin certified of a truth that he is loſt, not knowing where, how, nor for what cauſe. And for my part I ſwear unto you, I have already ſought for him in divers countries, and can hear no news at all, and I am determined never to leave travelling before he be found again, if it be poſſible for mortal man to do it. You are bound thereunto (ſaid Eſplandian) ſeeing he deſerveth it, as you know right well: Nevertheleſs if it pleaſeth you to put off your Helmet, and make you known unto us, that have bin bred and nouriſhed in his houſe, I aſſure you we will ſatisfie your mind ſo well as touching him, that we cannot chuſe but like it. My Lords (ſaid he, putting off his helmet) I am Norandel his ſon. When Eſplandian and the reſt perceived that, they made themſelves known unto him, imbracing each other moſt courteouſly. Ha my lord (ſaid Norandel) I pray you for Gods cauſe, if you know any thing touching the king, hide it not from me. Uncle (ſaid Eſplandian) about a moneth hence I left him at Mirefleur in good health God be thanked, making good chear: ſhewing him in what maner he had delivered him out of priſon, with all that paſſed touching the ſame. I marvel then (ſaid Norandel) what adventure brought you hither. By my ſoul (ſaid Eſplandian) that can I not well tell, onely that I was brought hither by the great Serpent which I left at the Sea-ſide, wherein maſter Elizabeth ſtayeth for me. Then he ſhewed him how he departed from the Court, his arrival in the Ferm Iſle, his imbarquing to take Sea, and what time they were at ſea before they diſcovered any land, till in the end (ſaid he) we eſpyed this country, where Sergil and I took land, in good time for Grandalin and

Lazinde, as hereafter they may shew you. But you (said he to Norandel) tel me of your faith, how was it your chance in so good time to meet with us? In truth (said Norandel) the peace made between Amadis and the king, I departed from the Court to seek some strange adventures that commonly are found in this country of Almaigne, where I had no sooner arrived, but I had certain newes of my fathers absence, whereat I was so grieved, that to find him out I have travelled the countries of Denmark, Poland, Russia, Swethland, Hungary, and all this country, even unto this place, where it is said there dwells two Giants, who as they are all of one nature, exercise innumerable cruelties against those they meet, the yonger of them waiting continually about this place for such as pass this way. And therefore when I saw you first, I thought one of you three to be the Giant, thinking to fight with him, or lose my life therefore: which I wil yet do if you let me pass. By God (said Gandalin) you lost your labor seeking for the King, so shall you likewise do if you take this enterprise in hand: Wherefore, said Norandel? Because (said he) you see him here in presence that easeth you of that burthen. With that he shewed him in what manner Esplandian had fought with the Giants, and how he, Lazinde, and diverse others were prisoners in their house, from whence Esplandian had delivered them. Before God (said Norandel) the newes liketh me well, for I never thought in long time any such adventure would have happened unto him, not knowing he had received the order of Knighthood. You see it so (said Esplandian) and master Elizabeth can tell you more, if it pleaseth you to go with us. Let us go then (said Norandel) for I would gladly see him: With that they rode towards the Sea, till they espied the great Serpent wherein they imbarqued themselves: where Norandel, Grandalin and Lazinde, understood by master Elizabeth what had happened to Esplandian from the day he received the order of knighthood. And although Norandel determined with all speed to return into great Britain, yet he changed his mind when he heard so strange and marvellous news of his Nephew Esplandian, to whom he said: My Lord, seeing fortune hath wrought us so well together, I pray you let me not leave your company till some occasion be

ministred unto us. Uncle (said Esplandian) I am content, and I pray you let it be so. In that manner they passed the rest of the day in the great Serpent, minding the next day because she stirred not, to take land again to see if they could find any more adventures: And they had scarce fallen asleep, but the Serpent began of it self to sayl forward so swiftly, that by sun rising they had lost the sight of any land, not ceasing for to sayl six days together before they espyed land: the seventh day when the Sun began to shine, it stayed at the Isle Saint Mary, which master Elizabeth presently knew, having bin there before with Amadis de Gaule, when he fought with Landriaque: wherefore he said unto the Knights, In good faith, I remember that once as I travelled on the Sea with my lord Amadis, we were cast upon this Island by so great a tempest, that we thought verily to have been drowned: And if then at sea we had great fear of death, being landed, our fear did more increase, and that with so good cause, that I cannot chuse but tremble to remember it. What said Esplandian? Can a danger so long time past breed so great a fear as you seem to have? Sir (said master Elizabeth) some men to hide the truth, make a great matter of a small, but if you had seen as much as I then saw, and that which as yet you may behold, if it pleaseth you to go where I was once, you shall find that I have no less occasion, and there is Grandalin that can witness it as well as I. I pray you bring us thither (said Esplandian) with that they caused the horses to be unshipt, and going to land, they mounted up the Island, til they came to the castle where Amadis stayed certain days to be healed of his wounds, where they found a knight that kept it for the Emperor, who being advertised by master Elizabeth what knights they were he had brought thither, bad them heartily welcome, offering them all the pleasure he could shew, but they staying not there, went forwards to the place where Amadis fought with Landriaque, where the Emperor had erected both their Images so like unto them, that there wanted only life to express the same: Which master Elizabeth shewed unto the knights, and to the end (said he) you believe me better another time, I pray you behold well the form of this great devil, who before my lord Amadis arrived had utterly de-

stroyed

troyed this most fertile Iland. And therewith he shewed them from point to point what had passed touching the same, as you have heard at large set down in the third book of this our History, whereat they were all abashed, especially to think how Landriaque could be slain or overcome by one knight alone; For although this image were but a senceless thing, yet it made them abashed, which having long time beheld, and visiting other places worthy memory, they returned to the great Serpent, which presently departed from the Isle, and with a good winde, in five days after arrived within half a mile of Constantinople, where it began to cast forth fire in so furious manner, that the sailers and others that perceived it, flew all away, doubting the fury of that monster, wherewith the Citizens were in such a fear, that news was brought unto the Emperor who as then was talking with the Ladies, whom he led unto the towers of his pallace to see what it might be, when they perceived the great Serpent, and the Sea raging so sore about it, that it seemed a gulf of fire, wherewith they were in such a fear, and the Emperor likewise, that he commanded all men to be armed, fearing it would come into the Town, and so destroy them all. But Gastilles that had seen it oftentimes, assured the Emperor that it was the Ship of the knight Esplandian, which Urganda brought first into great Britain. And to the end my Lord (said he) you shall not doubt thereof, if it pleaseth you I will go see if the son of Amadis be there, and bring him unto you. Do so I pray you (said the Emperor.) With that Gastilles went unto the Haven, entring into a Gally that he found ready to put to sea, commanding the master thereof to row unto the great Serpent, but whatsoever he could say, the master would not stir one foot, till such time he threatned him with fear of being hanged. Wherefore hoising up his anker, the company began to row forward, but it was impossible for them to come near the Serpent by a good bow shot, and withal the sea it was so high, that the wawes cast them back again into the Haven with so great a force, that the Gally was in danger to be cast away. Which the Princess Leonorine perceiving (who till then thought assuredly Esplandian had expressly come thither for to see her) began to despair of her good hope,

and

and making her complaint, said unto her self: Alas Monster, Ship, Galley, or what vessel soever thou art, wherefore art thou now so cruel unto me, in not suffering him that is within thee to land at this our Haven, to the end mine eyes might enjoy his presence, but rather as if thou haddest conceived a jealousie towards us, thou usest all means possible to hinder the ship wherein my cousin Gastilles saileth, not to approach near thee, that he might bring him hither, or at the least that we might hear some news of him. But in faith, all well weighed & considered, I think thee rather to have reason, and my self without consideration, for that so excellent a thing ought not to be so lightly set at liberty. Therefore it is no marvel if thou refuse him unto us, fearing lest thou shouldest loose him, seeing thou maist well vaunt that in thee there resteth so valorous knight, as in regard of him all others may be nought esteemed. I would to God, that we being both together, might neber depart out of thy body: for being with him, his onely presence would breed in me so much contentment, that I should think my self to have attained unto the top of all felicity: and if his love be such as Carmelle hath assured me, it cannot be, but that he suffereth the like passion I now endure, by obermuch desire to see his person. Wherewith she remained in such an extasie, that by the changing of her colour, it might easily be judged her heart was not at ease, which in the end compelled her to sigh, and at the same instant to repent the speeches she had used unto Carmelle, as also of the rich gown that she gave unto her. For (said she unto her self) what know I, if my sweet friend seeing her apparelled therein, would imbrace her, not for the love of her, but for the Gown that once belonged unto me. And if it be so, it is not to be doubted, but she will by all means seek to joyn her lips to his, yea and her body likewise: which would be worse, seeing she is neither so evil favored, nor of so bad behavior, but it may be in a heat he would both forget himself and me. But out alas, what said I? Truly I do him wrong to be so jealous of him, considering the chaste love that is between them both, and therefore if it so fall out, that in respect of me he shall imbrace her body, beholding her apparelled in a thing that sometimes served me, it will be much more glory unto me till I my-

self

ſelf may once embrace his body, as in time I doubt not but I ſhall. But if Leonorine were in pain, Eſplandian had no leſs, both ſolicited with like jealouſie, for the great diſtruſt of their not meeting at that time: and gladly would have approached nearer to each other, had it not been that the one was on land under the government of another man, the other at ſea within a veſſel which he could not command. In the mean time the great Serpent ſetting forwards, made ſuch ſpeed, that in very ſhort ſpace it paſſed the Straights of Boſphore. Wherewith the Princeſs Leonorine was like to ſwoon, but ſhe refrain'd it as much as poſſible ſhe might, fearing to manifeſt that, ſhe moſt deſired to keep ſecret. Whereby ſhe withdrew her ſelf half dead into her Chamber, and making as if ſhe deſired to ſleep, threw her ſelf on her bed, commanding her Gentlewomen to depart the chamber: they being gone, ſhe began again to renew her ſorrow, and almoſt drowned in tears, ſaid unto her ſelf: Alas, now I ſurely ſee and well perceibe my grief to be wholly without remedy, having ſeen the thing (that in all the world I moſt entirely love) ſo near unto me, and at one inſtant ſo ſuddenly to depart, that it is uncertain whither he is gone. Ya cruel torment: that ſtill increaſeth in me ſo covertly, is it poſsible that from henceforth I can ſo well diſſemble as yet I have done? Truly no: for if in time paſt I inforced my ſelf to eſteem the deſire I had a ſingular pleaſure unto me, now ſeeing I well perceibe my accurſed fortune to approach, and my joy to fade, in manner as ſoon as it was conceived, I deſire nought but death: which to me would be more acceptable, then live in ſo great pain, not hoping any eaſe. And leaving ſo, ſhe gave ſo great a ſigh, that Queen Minoreſſe heard it: Who fearing ſhe had been ſick, opened the chamber door, asking her how ſhe did? Wherewith the Princeſs perceibing that diſcovery, to excuſe her ſelf the beſt ſhe could, ſhe told the Queen ſhe dreamed. Madam (ſaid the Queen) it is not long ſince the Empereſs ſent to ſee what you were doing? Is it not your pleaſure to riſe and go unto her? Let us go (ſaid ſhe.) In the mean time Eſplandian with his companions ſayled ſo long, that within two days after they perceibed the Rock of the defended Mountain, and not far from them the Veſſels

and

and men of War Frandalo had assembled, that stayed for a wind to surprize the Turkish Army on the Sea, who perceiving the great Serpent making toward them, began to arm themselves, thinking it had bẽn some Monster that came to devour them. But Manely and the King of Denmark that had sẽn it oftentimes before, were very glad, giving them to understand what succor they might have thereby, whereat they all rejoyced, especially when they perceived Esplandian, Gandalin, and the rest, that Manely and the King of Denmark knew, wherefore causing a boat to be made ready, they with Frandalo & Argenton, the king of Denmarks squire (a very good mariner) entred into it, and rowing to the great Serpent, Esplandian received them with great joy, asking Manely what fortune had brought them thither. In faith (said he) it is not long since we departed from the City of Constantinople, to discover and to hinder the passage of victuals that are daily brought by sea from the town of Notolia to Armato king of Turks, who not long since hath besieged the Castle of the defended mountain, expecting daily the coming of the Emperor with a great Army to drive the Turk from thence. But we have had so contrary a wind, that it hath bin impossible for us to effect our charge. In good truth (said Esplandian) I would never have sought you in these Countreys, neither do I know what became of you after we fell asleep in this Vessel, I pray you tell it us. Then Manely began to shew how he and the king of Denmark when they awaked found themselves in a barque upon the coast of Italy, where taking land they found Urganda, and after that by cruel tempests they arrived in an Isle, where a Bear assailed them, in which Isle they saw two great Apes that shewed them much sport. But (said he) we thought to have starved therein for want of meat, for our victuals were clean consumed, when by fortune Frandalo arrived in the same Isle, with whom I fought, and overcame him. And because our barque was cast away, we entred into his, wherein we found a Gentlewoman that told us news of you, whom for your sake we conducted unto Constantinople, and from thence have brought her back again. As far as I understand (said Esplandian) you have not always slept, and I believe that never any Knight had so strange

adventures at their first entring into Arms, unless it were my lord Amadis my father, which I would hardly have believed, had it not been for the signs and evident tokens that we saw in the Isle Saint Mary. What were they (said the king of Denmark?) We saw the Image of Landriaque (said Esplandian) with whom he had so long and perillous a combate, It is true (said Argenton) that such combates against monsters, do oftentimes strike the hardiest Knights with fear, and the Combate of our Apes made sorrowful knights re orce. In good faith (said Esplandian) thou hast reason, and I like thee well for thy mirth, but I pray thee heartily return again and fetch the Gentlewoman that is in thy masters Ship, and bring her hither, that I may speak with her, which he presently did: and as she entred into the great Serpent, Esplandian embracing her, asked if if she had seen the Emperor, and the beautiful Princess Leonorine his daughter? I my lord (said she) both of them desiring your arrival in that country, especially the Princess Leonorine, with all the Ladies and Gentlewomen, being fully determined not to pardon the great fault you have committed in their behalfs, to have deferred off so long before you came to serve them, according to the promise made by Amadis your father, as I assured them: yet I think their displeasure is not s great, but you may well find means to pacifie the same. My good friend (said Esplandian) you are heartily welcome, we will talk together when better leisure serveth. Which he said, fearing she should have proceeded further, wherewith the standers by might have intelligence of the love he bare unto the Princess: wherefore leaving the Gentlewoman, and turning to Manley, he said: In faith I cannot well excuse my self, but that I do them wrong, for the first commandement my father gave me at such time I received the Order of Knighthood was, that in his place I should go and serve them, to quit the promise he had made. Nevertheless fortune hath ever since given me so many crosses thereby to hinder my intent, that I could neither fulfil his will, nor satisfie their expectations. While they were thus devising, two of Frandalos Brigantines, that by him were sent to espy the enemies navy, brought news they had seen great numbers of their Foistes and Gallies sayling to the

East,

Caſt, to fetch Victuals for the Navy, and that the reſt that remained behinde would eaſily be overcome, if it pleaſed them to ſet upon them: which the knights underſtanding, were of opinion, that without longer delay they would aſſail them, and preſently therewith hoiſed up their ankers, making as ſecretly as they could towards Armatos Fleet, yet they determined not to ſet upon them before the break of day, hoping to take them ſleeping, which in truth fell out. The firſt that ſet upon them was the great Serpent, that at her arribal entring among the enemies, caſt fire ſo fiercely at her mouth and noſtrils, that when they awaked it put them in ſuch fear, that loſing courage without ſtroke given, they all began to flie: Nevertheleſs it could not ſave their lives, but that the greateſt part of their veſſels were overwoned by means of a contrary winde that roſe ſo ſuddenly on the ſea, whereby it raged in ſuch ſort, that neither Maſt, Sayl, Board, nor Oar could hold, but were broken all in pieces: yet did not Frandalo loſe any of his fleet, neither did the camp once move thereat, for they were not ſeen of any other then the Centinel of the Caſtle, that preſently told Ambor and Talanque, whereat they received great pleaſure, eſpecially when they eſpied the great Serpent, and Eſplandian therein, with whom they talked long time before he came to land. At the laſt they concluded to avoid all danger, that the Rampiers they had made before the gate, ſhould for that time not be broken, but they would let down a ladder of cords, whereby they might mount up into the Caſtle, Frandalo having given order for the ſafety of his ſhips, which was preſently done.

CHAP. XXVI.

How *Armato* King of *Turky* had intelligence of the overthrow of his Army at Sea, by *Frandalo* and his company, and what enterprizes happened on both parts.

THat Aid entred into the Caſtle of the defended Mountain, Eſplandian deſirous to ſee the enemies Camp, preſently mounted upon the Walls, accompanied onely of Talanque and Ambor, that ſhewed the Tents of Armato, the

Bassias, Begherbeys, and Sangiacs, whereof some were lodged within the Base-Court, which they conquered at their first coming thither, wherewith Esplandian was much grieved, and asked Talanque how he suffered them to come so nèer? Assure your self (said he) it was not with our wills, but we defended it as long as possible we might, and the Portall likewise, which at their first coming they assailed. But we defended it so well, that without their Mine they had never won it, yet did it profit them but little, for that suddenly we destroyed all their Mine, that had cost them fifteen days labor. Which Armato perceiving, sought to begin again, which we by divers sallies would not suffer him to do: but whatsoever we could do, in the end their force prevailed, and we constrained to forsake the same, and retire unto the Castle, and that in good time, for we were scarce entred into the dungeon, but they fired it, whereby the Portal fell down, giving us at that time one of the most cruel assaults that ever place sustained, being so meanly guarded as it was, and assure your self, that there is neither loop-hole nor window, but they raised ladders or some other engines against it, and with lances, fire, and sword, gave us so much to do, that we were in doubt to be overcome. Nevertheless they were as hotly repulsed, for Libee gave them such entertainment with a dram of Powder, that he set on fire, as they began to cry out victory, but upon a sudden their cry became so pitiful, as nothing but sorrow and lamentation could be heard among them, wherewith there were so many of them burnt and singed, that never since they durst approach so nèer, although we have given them divers skirmishes, but for the space of eight days we never issued forth, by reason (as you know) if we should often issue forth, it is impossible but some of our men must of force be slain, and the death of one of ours would be more loss unto us, than the slaying of a hundred of their men would profit us. You have done well (said Esplandian) for all wise Captains ought to content themselves with the sure defending of a Hold committed unto them, not hazarding themselves to loss as long as possible they may. But for the further safety of this Castle, I think it good we take counsel what were best to be done, lest we be surprized. Wherewith they

went

went into the chamber where Matroco died, where they met together, and (among divers things propounded) it was concluded, the next night they would issue forth to slay the enemies watch, which would easily be done, seeing they had not any alarm in long time before. Wherefore every man went to refresh himself, till about eleven of the Clock at night, when Frandalo and the rest armed themselves. And as they were all assembled in the Court, Esplandian standing in the middle, spake unto them and said, My good friends, we are not now among the Combates of Great Brittain, where Combates are fought more for fantasie or vain-glory, than upon any just occasion: But this War we make against the proper enemies of our Faith, summoneth us not onely to do our endeavors, but also to defend the honor and liberty of the name of Christians: wherefore my good companions, I beseech you let every man cast fear aside, preferring vertue before any inconvenience whatsoever. Assuring you (if we do so) that before it be day, king Armato and his army shall well find we are not so faint-hearted as he estéemeth us. Then calling Norandel unto him, he said: Uncle, you, Manely, and the king of Denmark, with a hundred men, shall issue first to slay the Centinels, and if you could do the like unto their watch, our enterprize would be brought to pass as we desire. But whatsoever chanceth, set you upon them, and fear not the repulse, for Gandalin and Lazinde shall second you with two hundred more, by which means you may easily retire if you be constrained thereunto. Nevertheless, let no man stir from hence till Frandalo and I be first gone out, for that we two alone will go into their Camp, to see what countenance they make, and as fortune favoreth us, we will presently join with you. With that he sent for two gowns of cloth of gold, and two Turkish caps, whereof he gave one unto Frandalo, and kept the other for himself, and being armed under their apparrel, were let down (by the ladder of cords) on the sea side, & feigning to be some of the sea captains went straight unto the Camp, where they were staied by the Centinels, but Frandalo speaking the Arabian tongue, could so well dissemble, that he made them believe they went to advertise the Great Turk of a thing of great importance, whereby

they

they let them pass. Mean time Armato King of Turky sate devising in his tent with his familiar friends, touching the loss of ships, whereof not above an hour before, he had received news by one of his marriners, that saved himself in a small Frigot: but the Turk could not by any means imagine how it came to pass, seeing his spies that were newly returned from Constantinople, had brought him news that the Emperor stirred not, neither made any preparation to assayl him. And as Frandalo & Esplandian entred the tent, they heard the marriner tell how that cruel overthrow happened by means of a monster of the Sea, that came with the enemies fleet. That (said he) put us in such fear, with casting fire out of his mouth, nose, and eyes, that thereby the most part of our men were burnt to ashes. By all my gods (said Armato) it is some devil that envyeth my prosperity. And it pleaseth your Grace said one of his Basshes, (that had sailed in the Mediteranian Sea, & heard speaking of the great Serpent) there is nothing but art Magick used therein, whereof I am most sure, as having divers times him certified there f. Wherewith they heard a great alarum, for Norandel and his company had issued out of the castle with white scarffes about their heads for to be known, and had so well surprised the watch about the base court, that they had slain them all, whereof Armato had intelligence, as also that the enemies had gotten the issue of the Portal, wherewith he was so moved, that in a great rage with very small company he went thither himself. Esplandian & Frandalo following after, as if they had been of his company. But before their arrival, Norandel had recovered the pallasadoes of the fortress, and there sustained the whole Turkish forces, staying Gandalins coming. Now the entry of the Court was so narrow, that more then three men could not pass through it at once, whereby those of the castle had in manner as much advantage as their enemies. Which Ambor, Talanque, Gandalin, and Libee made them well feel, coming likewise upon them, for as the king arrived, they thrust them clean out of the place, whereby they fled in great haste, till the Turk himself caused them to stay, and seeing him, they took courage, turning their faces, whereby the Skirmish began much better then before, Armato

him-

himself shewing great prowess, when Esplandian that was still behind him, took him by the middle, and in despight of them all, carryed him unto the walls of the Castle, crying with a loud voice, Be of good cheer my companions, we have taken the King. At the which cry the Turkes set so fiercely on them, that had it not bin for Frandalo (who as yet had not shewed himself) they had recobered him again, but he joyned himself with Manley, Norandel, and the rest that sustained the force of all the enemies so baliantly, that Esplandian had means to put Armato in sure keeping, and to return again unto the battel before it was ended. But it continued not long after, for that news was presently carryed to the Camp, that the King was prisoner with two of his chiefcaptains, taken by Grandalin and the King of Denmark, wherewith they were so much abashed, that by little and little they began to retire, the like did they of the Castle, contenting themselves with the booty they had gotten.

CHAP. XXVII.

How *Armato* King of *Turky* was committed unto the custody of *Gandalin*, and what conference he had with *Frandalo*.

THose of the Castle retired, as you heard before, Esplandian called Gandalin and Libee, praying them to look unto King Armato, as also to the two Turkish captains, and appointing the watch as time required, went and laid him down upon his bed, not ceasing all the night to think on the speech Carmelle used him touching the Princess Leonorine, whereby he could not sleep till day began to appear, when Frandalo and the rest of his Knights entred into his chamber, to talk with him, not onely as touching the intertainment of their prisoners, but of other things that much imported them And as they were in counsel together, Grandalin came unto them, shewing them that King Armato desired for to speak with them, whereupon they went out of the chamber to hear what he would say. Frandalo could speak the Arabian tongue better then the rest, for that he had serbed the King of Turks, and he knew him very well, wherefore Esplandian desired him to speak for all the rest. And entring

ring into the Chamber, Frandalo went first, who kneeling on the ground, kissed the Kings hand. With that Armato thinking he had been prisoner, asked him where he was taken. My Lord (said he) I am now become a Christian, and a Knight of Jesus Christ, that hath done me so much grace, not long time since to call me to be one of his. A Christian (said the King) is that possible? By my soul it maketh me more abashed, then the cruel fortune that is now happened unto me: for that all Knights following arms ought patiently to bear those hazards that they fall into, using necessity as a vertue. But thou unhappy wretch (that through fear and want of courage) haste forsaken our just and holy law, wherefore takest thou not a rope and hangest thy self, as unworthy to go upon the earth? My Lord (said he) you may say what pleaseth you, as being privileged for the greatness of your estate, yet I can assure you, I never had so cowardly a heart as you esteem I have, but rather account my self happy to have done that I have done. Yet will I not refuse to do you service (my honor still reserved) in any thing I can. With that Armato remembred himself, and thought he did him wrong, wherefore moderating his choler, he said unto him: Friend Frandalo, If it grieveth me to have lost you, let it not seem strange unto you, seeing now I had greater hope then ever I have had to be served by your means. But seeing it is so, you know how I have used you heretofore, now I pray you (if you may do any thing for me) to finde the means with your companions that I may be delivered from hence by some reasonable composition. My Lord (said Frandalo, pointing to Esplandian.) This is he that hath all power and authority in this place, both over you and me. With that Armato looked upon him, and perceiving him so young without a beard, thought Frandalo said it to excuse himself, wherefore he asked if he mocked him. God forbid I should do so my Lord (said Frandalo) but I pray you believe me, for it is true, that my Lord Esplandian standing here before you, is he and none other that slew Matroco, Frerion, Arcalaus the inchanter, & Argantes the Porter of the castle, which he conquered, as you have been advertised. By my head (said the king) I would hardly have estemed him for

so

so brabe a man: but seeing it is so, I pray thee do somewhat with him touching the thing I told you of even now. Beliebe me my lord (said Frandalo) there shall want no good will in me: and with that he bad him God morrow, and leabing him with his guard, they went into the Hall, where they found the table ready coberedfor dinner, for it was about noon time. But as Esplandian rested ill that night, so be made but a mean dinner, not being able to withdraw bis mind from thinking on the princess Leonorine which was the cause that the Tables being uncobered, be went in bis chamber, without any company, onely the king of Denmark, whom be lobed as himself, where being together, be began to shew him the cause why be sent Carmelle to Constantinople, as also what affection be bare to the Princess Leonorine. And to the end said be) you be participant of my joy, I pray you let us habe ber here, that she may shew us what she learned in ber boyage. My lord (said the king of Denmark) if you saw ber apparrelled in the gown the Princess gabe ber, I am assured you will scarse know ber at the first. Will you that I send ber word to bring it bither? It is well said (said Esplandian) with that he called a Squire, sending him to Carmelle, that as then was in company of Arcabonnes Gentlewomen: but understanding Esplandians pleasure, went presently to apparrel her self as he willed ber, and habing a mantle on ber shoulders because she would not be seen, went to him in bis chamber, where she found him and the King of Denmark talking together: but as soon as he espyed ber, he took ber in bis arms, and setting ber in a chair cobered with belbet, said unto ber: My good friend, I mean to shew my companion you see here, how much I lobe and esteem him, wherefore I pray you shew me before him what intertainment the Princess Leonorine gabe you, knowing you came from me, and whither I find any fabor in ber sight. My lord (said she) as soon as I was arribed, and that she understood the cause of my coming unto ber, I found ber no less yours then you bers: whereby I may esteem you the happiest Knight libing in the world. And know you why? She is so fair, and of so comely personage, that unless it be ber self none can resemble ber, and of truth she doth far surpass all other Ladies, for being alone in

her private chamber playing on some instrument, or singing for her pleasure, she stealeth and ravisheth the hearts (separated from the bodies of such) as either hear or see her: and if at sometimes she attireth her self after the Italian manner, with a cap of that country fashion, then you may see her fair and glistering hair, part giving a certain shadow on her vermilion cheeks, the rest knit up together, inbironing her head, shewing with far better grace then any crown that she could wear, be it of stones, laurel, or the finest gold that may be found But if that be a temptation unto man, her two humble and modest eyes (like two suns) give them as many deaths, as they at times behold the same, and again reviveth them better then at the first, and all at one instant: whereat you must not be abashed, seeing that love it self doth often skirmish and stribe in them, thereby to yield both pain and pleasure unto those that do behold the same: and if he touch her, he feareth to hurt her, as being in most extream passions of love. And not without a cause, for that nature having made her, brake the mould, that she might be the only perfect creature, accompanied with so many vertues, that love findeth nothing in her but bones to gnaw upon And I assure you my lord, that speaking unto her of those things you had given me in charge, I plainly perceived her by the changing of her countenance to be charged with the like disease whereof you still complain: for sometimes she blushed, and again became pale, and other while was at such an exigent, that she could not answer me a ready word: especially when I presented her with the ring that she once gave to Amadis your father, as she told me afterwards: In recompence whereof she sendeth you this fairlace, which she most earnestly desireth you to keep for the love of her, and as the first Jewel her Grandmother Grimanaise gave to the Emperor Appolidon, being but her lover. Expressly sending you the same as an assured token of the love she beareth unto you, and the good will, she will be ready always to shew you during her mortal life. With that she took a little box out of her bosom wrapped in a piece of Taffata, and gave it unto him, which Esplandian received, & taking it out of the box, he sighed tenderly and said: Ha most fortunate present, (the first witness of the perfect alli-

ance

ance that the moſt loyal lovers that ever lived had together, from whom is deſcended the Paragon of all beauty) happy to have approached ſo nèer her perſon: But I much happier that receiveth it, as more affectioned to ſerve her then any other living on the earth: and it pleaſeth God, while life indureth, I truſt thou never ſhalt depart from me, but I will kèep thée as carefully as I deſire ſhe ſhould hold my heart. Yet this is not all (ſaid Carmelle but behold the recompence of my labor, and ſaying ſo, ſhe caſt the mantle from her ſhoulders, ſhewing them her rich gown all covered with crowns of Gold, which put Eſplandian in mind of that Urganda ſent him word by her Gentlewoman, when ſhe ſent him the white armor ſet with the like deviſe, confirming in his mind the hope that until then he had holden doubtful: wherat he felt the greateſt eaſe that poſsible he might. And as they beheld the great and excellent workmanſhip, with the great and coſtly imbroidery of Pearls and precious Stones wherewith it was all covered, Grandalin came and knocked at the door, to ſhew them that there were a great number of veſſels diſcovered on the ſea, and fearing them to be ſome new ſupply of Turks, was of advice they ſhould be ready to receive them. Whereupon each man ran to arms, cauſing more men to go into their Ships for their better ſafety: yet that alarm continued but a while, for that the Pennons and Banners of Conſtantinople were perceived on their Ships, by ſuch as they ſent out for to deſcry them: ſome of them coming back again in great haſte to ſhew them that Gaſtilles as general of the Army for the Emperor, was coming to ſuccor them: whereof the Turks having intelligence, preſently brake up their Camp, being gone far from the Caſtle before any of the veſſels come near the ſhoar: Nevertheleſs, thoſe of the caſtle ſet upon their rereward and in the chaſe ſlew ſo great a number, that had not night come on (conſidring the evil order they held) there had not eſcaped a man of all their camp. In the mean time Gaſtilles with his army came unto the mountain, where Eſplandian, the king of Denmark, and divers others ſtood ready to receive him: and after many courteſies and welcomes on all parts given, Gaſtilles asked them how they dealt with their enemies? As well as may be (ſaid Eſplandian,) but we

could not by any means cause them to stay till your coming, but they are fled from hence as soon as they heard news thereof: Then he told him of the larums and issues by them made during the siege, as also of the taking of King Armato. That is good news (said Castilles) God be praised therefore, if mine uncle the Emperor had been advertised thereof before my departure from Constantinople, I had not found the means to come send to visit you, which would have displeased me much, neither would he have bin at charge to furnish such a Navy: but he was in doubt you were in great necessity, that at my putting to sea he commanded me to make all y speed I could, til he came in person with four hundred sayl that already are prepared if our forces should not be sufficient to sustain the Turkish army: but for this year he shal be excused, if there happen no other adventure. I pray you (said Esplandian) come to land, and go with us into the castle, where we will confer of all things with some better leisure: Which he agreed unto, wherewith he & some of the principal captains of his army, entred into the knights boat, and with them went up into the castle: where being arrived, Castilles y knew king Armato, desired Esplandian before he did any thing else, that he might see him, wherewith he brought him to the chamber, where he sate as pensive as any man could be, Castilles did him honor, as to his estate appertained. But king Armato would hardly look upon him, but said unto him: Castilles, I marvel much why the Emperor your master (contrary to his faith and promise) hath broken the peace agreed upon between us, and for a thing so little importing him as this place doth, whereunto he never had any right, as you well know. But I perceive from whence the same proceedeth: because he would every man should know the little faith and less loyalty that is in him, which I shall one day make him know full well, if ever I escape out of this prison. My Lord said Castilles, your honor saved) the Emperor my master hath in him all the parts that belong unto a wise, vertuous, and hardy Prince, such as he is, and it seemeth unto me (under your correction) that by good and just cause he hath done no more then he might do: seeing it is evident that this castle hath bin conquered by Christian knights, whom

he

he is bound to labor with all the aid he can, not onely to defend our Law, or because they have desired his aid, as being the first and greatest Monarch in the world, but to sustain the right that both he and his Predecessors have always pretended to these Marches. And where you threaten to make him feel the small Loyalty wherewith you accuse him, at other times heretofore you have met each other with your Faces, where you sped so hardly, that I rather believe you speak in choler then with reason, especially considering the estate wherein you are at this present. Gastilles (said Armato) although I were dead, I have sufficient number of Captains and good Soldiers in my Countrey to revenge my Cause, and a son likewise, that is not born to endure the injury done unto his father: and thus much I assure thee, that if I thought him to be other, I would slay him with mine own hands as soon as I should see him. My Lord (said Esplandian) that Prince, Knight, or Gentleman that useth such unfit speech as you do now, is commonly holden for a man of no capacity, especially when he is in a place where humility rather then threatnings would become him better: Have you already forgotten the prison wherein you are, and in the hands of those that have so small occasion to wish you well? My lord, vertue is never better known to be in men, but then when he is in most distress: Wherefore if until this time you have not known what constancy doth mean, learn hereafter to discern the same, using words worthy your estate, and not such, nor so injurious as you have uttered unto my Lord Gastilles, who in this place representeth the person of an Emperor, (a greater lord then you) in whose mercy your life or death consisteth: for we are all his souldiers, ready to do him service. The king perceiving well that he had done them wrong, and fearing to be hardlier used then he was accustomed to be, said unto Esplandian, Sir Knight, I pray you pardon my impatience, considering with your self the great grief and melancholy humor wherein I am, when I (that was wont to be feared & redoubted of all the Princes in Asia) am now constrained to obey the will and pleasure of my greatest enemies, which unto me is so extream grief, that I die each day a hundred times, because I cannot die. But Esplandian answered not

one word, but leaving him with his guard, taking Gastilles by the hand, led him into one of his best chambers, where they supped. The next day they assembled all together, and after many matters propounded, it was agréed among them (according to Frandalos advice) that they should enter into Turky, being as then in great perplexity, as well for the taking of king Armato, as for the ouerthrow of his Army, as it shall be shewed unto you hereafter, for at this time we will cease to speak thereof: returning to shew you of King Luisart, that during this time, for the most part held his Court in the City of London.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How the greatest part of the Knights that used to be at King *Luisarts* Court, returned unto their own houses, and of the Coronation of *Amadis* and *Oriane* at *London*.

YOu have heard before of the Combate betwéen Esplandian and Amadis his father, and how after long time of their abode at Miresleur, staying the healing of their wounds, Esplandian desiring to return unto the Castle of the defended Mountain, took his leave of king Luisart, the like did divers of ỹ knights that as then were at court: as Galaor king of Sobradise, Agraies, Gransador, Balan, Galuanes, & Angriote d'estrauaulx, some to sée their wives, others to tast the ease and pleasant rest of their mansion houses: whereby it hapned the Court was less replenished with knights than it had béen in long time before, especially by reason of the news they heard from ỹ castle the defended mountain, whither divers young knights travelled to aid Esplandian. King Luisart therefore so meanly accompanied as I said before, being very old and decrepit, began to be melancholy, and to have the palsie, setting aside all hunting, hawking, arms, and chivalry, or any other pleasure whatsoever: And with a remembrance of death, so much abhorred all things past, present, and to come, that he estéemed them vain and altogether transitory: whereby he determined to depose himself of all kingly estate and government of his Realm, to pass the rest of his time in a solitary and religious maner, especially when he called to mind the great perils

rils from whence he had escaped, and above all his last most dangerous and cruel imprisonment. Nevertheless, for a time he kept it secretly, until one night he being a bed with the Queen, where they lay talking of the ficklenes of this world, he discovered his whole mind unto her, and how he determined to make Amadis his son King and Governor of his Country: to the end he might freely and without any interruption withdraw himself to this castle of Mirefleur, where (by Gods help) he meant to live a solitary life. The Queen that was one of the wisest and devoutest ladies in her time, confirmed him so well in his opinion, that they agreed to return to London, there to accomplish their pretence. And the next day they departed from Mirefleur, accompanied of Amadis, Gransador, and others, and coming to London, after they had remained there a certain time, the Queen sent for all the nobility: who being arrived at the court, caused a scaffold to be made in the principal place of all the City where the people might repair. And as he and the Queen both apparrelled in their royal Robes, each set in a chair of Estate, Amadis sitting somewhat lower on his right hand, & Oriane on the left, were come thither, a Herauld crying thrice, that all the people should keep silence: the King with a stately countenance and Princely magnanimity turning to the people, said unto them: My good friends and loyal subjects, before I begin to shew you the cause why I have made you to repair unto this place, I will put you in mind of part of the dangers and great hazards wherein I have often fallen since the death of my brother of famous memory king Falangris, when it pleased God to call me unto the government of this land, and as I think there are yet many of you living that can wel remember the danger wherein both I and my country thought to fall, when by the means and subtilty of Arcalaus the inchanter, I was delibered into their hands that long time before had conspired my death, from whence my son Amadis delibered me: Yet not long after by evil counsel, I made war against him, which ended as all men know, fortune envious of my felicity, afterward prepared me such a banket, that without his help I had been prisoner with king Aravigre, and utterly overthrown. And that which hath yet more astonished

me

me was, that when I thought my self sure and out of danger of all mishaps, a worse than all the former suddenly chanced unto me, the which (considering the place wherein I was) I thought verily to have bin the end and consummation of my days. Nevertheless the Lord God regarding me in pity, sent my young son Esplandian to my sorrowful prison, from whence he hath delivered me, as no doubt you have heard. Now my good subjects you all see me to be very old and white haired, having already attained to the threescore and tenth year of my age, which maketh me think it time now to forget all worldly pleasures, and to serve God to whom I am so much bound: And for this cause I have determined from henceforth to forsake all royal dignity, and leave you my son Amadis for your King, to whom at this time I yield both my Crown, Scepter, and all the right I have unto the Government of this Land, praying you all as much as possibly I may, that hereafter you will be faithful and true subjects unto him, as you have always bin to me. And although he be but my son in law, if I knew him unworthy of the place, believe me my good friends, I would sooner chuse a neer stranger for my successor, than I would do him: but there is not one among you but knoweth well his great deserts, and of what Race he cometh, that at this day may well be called one of the most noble and happiest Linages in all the world, as being descended from the valiant Trojans, whereof the memory shall endure for ever. He is a Kings son, heir unto the Crown of France, and now your Prince and Governor, and so I leave him unto you, with my Daughter your Queen and lawful Princess, holding to my self onely the Castle of Mirefleur, where (with Gods help) the Queen and I will end our days religiously, serving God, as we are bound to do. Then calling Amadis, giving him his Royal Mantle, he willed him presently to put it on, the like did the Queen to Oriane. Mean time the silence was so great, that nothing could be heard among the people but cries and lamentations, moved with pity and compassion to see the determination of their Prince: who being apparrelled in a simple robe of black cloth took his son and the Queen his daughter, set them in their Regal Seats, and in presence of all the people set each of them a Crown

a crown of Gold upon their heads, causing them to be proclaimed by the Heralds, King and Queen of great Britain: That done, every man departed, some weeping, and others glad, for the advancement they hoped from ỹ new king, who from thenceforth began so wisely to govern his country, ỹ never was any prince better beloved nor obeyed of his subjects. King Luisart within short time after (accompanied of the Queen and Grumedan) went into Mirefleur as he had determined to do, where they lived so austerely, helping and being present at every hour when service was to be said, as readily as the poorest of the old men that remained there, for the administration and service to the religious women in the Monaster of the devout Abbesse Adalasta. But when king Amadis perceived his means to recompence those of whom in his yong years he had received great pleasure and service, he began to exalt Arban de Norgalles, giving him one of the fairest Islands in his country, to Gandales the lands of the Duke of Bristow, to Gandalin (as then absent) he gave the lands of Arcalaus ỹ inchanter, he made Angriotte d'estrauaulx great master of his horse, Guilan le Pensife high-steward of his house, Ardan le nain his chiefcarver, and married the Gentlewoman of Denmark very richly. Not long after the Queen was brought to bed of a goodly Son and a fair Daughter both at one birth, the Son named Perion, and the Daughter Brisenne: At whose nativity great joy was made throughout all the country, especially at London, where the same day one of Norandels Squires arrived, that told king Amadis how Esplandian, and his master met together in Almaigne, where the day before he had slain two Giants, and delivered Candalin, with divers other Knights, Squires, Ladies, and Gentlewomen out of prison. Knowest thou (said the king) what way they took afterward? My lord (said the Squire) they made account to go unto ỹ castle called the defended Mountain, to help them that are therein, being in great necessity. which the King understanding, sent presently for all the Pilots that might be found, and in all haste caused to rig and arm the greatest ship he had to sayl into the East to his son, who in the mean time (moved thereunto by Frandalo) departed from the castle of Matroco with the Emperors army to invade the Turks country, as in the next chapter you shall hear.

The Fifth Book of

CHAP. XXIX.

How the Town of *Alfarin* in *Turky* being assaulted, was taken by *Esplandian* and the rest of his company.

NOt long after the Siege of the defended Mountain was raised, and Gastilles arrived at the Castle, as you heard before: Frandalo had advise by Belleris his Nephew, (that returned out of Turky, where he had been to see what news in the Countrey) that Alfarax Son to King Armato, and Governour of the great City of Tesifant, understanding the imprisonment of his Father, with the overthrow of the Turkish Army, was departed from the town of Alfarin, where he had left the beautiful Princess Heliaxa his wife, daughter to Amphirion King of Medea, to go with all dilligence to set order in his own government, and raise more men, thereby to resist the Christians power if they entred further into the country. Which understood by Esplandian, Gastilles, Ambor, Manley, and the king of Denmark, they determined to enter into Turky, whereunto by many reasons Frandalo perswaded them, shewing them what means they had to besiege the town of Alfarin, not above two days journey from them, being hardly provided of victuals, and no Garrison therein: Wherefore it was agreed among them, that Gastilles with his Navy of ships should depart the next evening in as secret manner as he could, to see if he might surprise their Haven, and that they on the other side would travel all night, whereby they might besiege the Town both by land and sea, entring therein before the Turks should hear news thereof. And as they agreed, they put the same in execution: in such manner that Gastellis (giving forth that he would return again unto Constantinople) about Sun-setting took ship, when he put to sea, the moon shone bright, wherefore hoising up their ankers, they set sayl: And they had not sailed long, but he called his chief Captains together, discovering his enterprise unto them, wherewith presently leaving the way to Conflantinople, they made towards the town of Alfarin. On the other side, Frandalo slept not, when he perceived his time, (all the company being already ad-

adbertiſed that he meant to go by night) they iſſued out of the caſtle, every man carrying victuals with him for the ſpace of four days: And they travelled ſo long, that about the break of day they came unto a great forreſt, where they ſtayed in ambuſhmēt till the next night following, when they iſſued forth, and about three of the clock at night they came unto a path that went two ways, where Frandalo cauſed them to ſtay, and calling Eſplandian, ſaid unto him: My lord, I pray you let us two and no more take the way that leadeth on the left hand, and Belleris my nephew ſhall guide the reſt of our company to the mountain of Yarebreh, from whence they may eaſily ſée if our Lady be nēer the city of Alfarin, and then as they finde the enterpriſe go forward, they may aſſail the place, or elſe remain in ambuſh till occaſion ſerveth. You and I will follow on this way, that will bring us to ỹ adventurous fountain, by the which lyeth the great way that leadeth to Teſifant, where moſt commonly are found divers ſtrange adventures, and if by fortune we might mēet the Princeſs Heliaxe, that as to morrow ſhould depart from Alfarin to go unto her husband, we ſhall not looſe our labors. Let us go (ſaid Eſplandian:) with that Belleris and his company went their way, and Frandalo, Eſplandian, Sergil, with the King of Denmark, took the other way, who about the break of day arrived at the adventurous fountain, where there ſtood four great copper pillars all gilded, and at each pillar hung a table with certain writings therein, the contents thereof when time ſerveth you ſhall hear declared, as alſo the occaſion why they were ſet up. Being arrived there, not far off they perceived a light that iſſued out of a Taffata pabillion that ſtood upon the ſide of the fountain, whereunto they approached as covertly as they could, where they perceived a moſt beautiful Gentlewoman combing of her hair, and not far from thence twenty Knights all armed kéeping watch about her, among the which was a ſquire holding a horſe all trapped with cloth of gold. But Frandalo and Eſplandian were no ſooner arrived, but they were diſcovered, yet they fearing a greater ambuſh, the moſt part of them loſing courage, began to flie away: which the two Knights perceiving, entred among them, and at their firſt coming ober-

threw four or five of them unto the ground, forcing them that were behind to return again, wherewith there began a fierce and cruel battel, for those that first began to run away (looking back and perceiving onely two Knights that set upon their fellows) were so ashamed, that they turned again to help them: nebertheless without the force of three Giants that held against the knights, they could not have indured so long against Esplandian and Frandalo, but they three fought so valiantly with them, that the two knights were in the greatest danger then ever they were before. And as you see a Boar foming at the mouth (followed of a troop of dogs) set his taile against a tree, and with his tuskes tear and rent the flesh of the boldest dogs that do assayl him, so were Frandalo and Esplandian among the Knights they had assayled, striking both on the right hand and the left with so great fury, that at one instant two of their principal enemies were slain, so that there remained but one Giant to fight with them, with whom Frandalo made his party good, while Esplandian followed the rest, that as then began to flie But when the Giant perceived Esplandian return, being in fear of death, he stepped aside and said unto Frandalo, Sir Knight, you and I have often bin companions in many haughty enterprises, I pray you therefore shew me the favor to receive me unto mercy, otherwise you might be blamed of those that know us both, for I am your cousin Foron. Whereat Frandalo was much abashed, & could hardly be perswaded thereunto, wherefore he prayed him to put off his helmet, and if it be true (said he) that thou art Foron, I will use thee both like a friend and kinsman. Wherewith ỳ Giant disarmed his head, whereby Frandalo knew him and imbraced him, whereat Esplandian was much abashed, not knowing what had passed betwéen them, with that he went nérer unto them, asking upon what cause that salutation procéded. Then Frandalo told what the Giant was, desiring him likewise to take pity on him: which Esplandian agréed unto, then they three together went unto the pabillion, at ỳ entry whereof they found the gentlewoman talking with Carnelle, no more abashed at the overthrow of her men, then if she had séen them iustle for their pleasures She was apparrelled in a gown of Damask all imbroi-

dered

dered and set with Pearls and precious stones, Frandalo presently knew her, as having seen her oftentimes, especially the same day she was married to Alphorax, where he justeled and did so valiantly, that she intertained him for her knight, wherefore lighting on foot, and pulling off his helmet, he saluted her in most humble manner. Wherewith she being abashed to see him that she esteemed wholly to be hers, so to have behaved himself against her guard, said unto him: How now Frandalo, is this the service I looked for at your hands, having received you for my Knight? The devil take such servants, seeing you are so fainthearted unto her, that hitherto hath reputed you one of the most courteous knights that ever was girt with sword: but now I find I am deceived, for I should rather have suspected any other then you to be a doer in this enterprise, whereby I cannot but be much abashed. Madam (said Frandalo) since ỹ time I became your knight, at the last Tourney that I ran, a lord of greater power hath intertained me into his service, whom I will serve during my mortal life, seeing it hath pleased him to shew me so great favor, being well assured, that when you know him as I do, you will esteem me happy, how cowardly or villainous soever you account me now. What is he (said she) tell me of your faith? it is Jesus Christ (said Frandalo:) yet will I never faile to do you all the honor and service that I can, as also now at this time, so my companion be content, for without him I cannot do it. Frandalo (said Esplandian) you may command me, for I am ready to do what pleaseth you: Wherefore delay not to do all the pleasure & service you can unto this lady if it be your will. Wherewith Frandalo thanked him most heartily, and said to Heliaxe: Madam, seeing he will have it so, I pray you from henceforth put all your trust in me, and I will not faile to be careful for you: Mean time I pray you get upon your palfry, that I may bring you to a place where you may see far better tourneys then any at your wedding: afterward (if it pleaseth God to favor us) you shall easily perceive how much I esteem and have in remembrance the favors you have heretofore shewed unto me, being but a simple knight, and you a great Princes to command far better then my self: for never was Princess more honored and esteemed among her

own

own subjects then you shall be of them, to whom I mean to bring you, which may be an example unto Kings and mighty Princes, to whom God hath given power and authority, who being advertised of the honorable and good intertainment made to you by us, they may be moved hereafter to take pleasure in entertaining the meaner as well as the greater, considring the mutability of fortune, as by your self it well appeareth. Frandalo (said she) you may make as many excuses and fair promises as you list, yet can you not deny but you have done me wrong, yet in doing as you say you will, your reputation will be better to the world, although your faith hath fayled to our goods: wherefore let us go where it pleaseth you. With that she got upon her palfrey, and Frandalo bareheaded leading her horse, till they came neer unto the town, where they heard a great noise, that made the two knights think, either their enterprise to be discovered, or that their Souldiers assailed the Town. And fearing they had bin repulsed, began to repent themselves of their long staying with the Princess, to whom Frandalo in most courteous maner said: Madam, Is it not your pleasure (mean time that I and my companion go unto the town) to stay here for us with this Gentlewoman and my cousin Foron? I truly (said Heliaxa) and I will not depart from hence before I hear of you again. With that Frandalo and Esplandian ran in great haste towards the Town, where they found their companions fighting with those of Alfarin, among the which were Talanque, Ambor, the King of Denmark, Gandalin, Lazinde, that had given the town a hard skirmish on that side, thinking to give them so much to do, that in the mean time the army by sea might assayl the water gate: but they were too soon discovered, whereby they found great resistance on all sides: Nevertheless Norandel and Belleris had gotten the Barriers, and repulsed the enemies unto the pallisadoes Which Esplandian and Frandalo perceiving, they lighted on foot, and being covered with their shields, their swords in their hands, passed through the prease, and with bold courage, went so far, that they slew great number of the enemies: for the Alfarins to defend their city issued out of the gates, and the Christians to win it, did most baliantly, but the place was so narrow,

narrow, they could not hurt their enemies so much as in the open field. Whereby it happened, that Frandalo and Esplandian minding either to win or lose, stepped so far forward, that the Alfarins flying into the town, and they after, found themselves alone within the same among their enemies, and that so far, that had it not bin for Frandalo, Esplandian (that took no care but only to kill and overthrow the enemy) had ben inclosed by them, but he pulled him back. Whereby the two Knights perceived the danger they were in, wherefore by little and little they got unto the steps, that went upon the wall: where they sustained many hard assaults without being hurt, although the enemy ceased not to throw Launces, Stones, Darts, and all other weapons at them they could find, none of them daring come to handle strokes, for if any advanced himself to shew his prowess, it cost him his life, or else was thrown down headlong. Mean time Norandel and his company, that had seen Frandalo and Esplandian shut into the town, sought by all means to scale the walls, or else to break the gates: but all in vain, for they within defended it so with Oyl, scalding Water, Logs and Stones, that divers of them were overthrown, and ended their lives most miserably. And fighting in that sort, a knight all armed came from the Haven, crying with loud voice and said: Be of good courage my children, be of good courage, defend this quarter well, for our enemies on the sea-side have not as yet found means to set one man on land, and yet have lost above two hundred of their men. By God (said one of them) I see not one that standeth idle, yet can we not overcome these two knights. Why so (said ỳ other:) They are (said he) entring in among us, and we have bin these two hours fighting with them, but all in vain, for the youngest of them fighteth so valiantly, that we dare not approach them: And which is more, he and his companion in despight of us all have gotten those stairs, where they now defend themselves, and that so wel that we can find no means to drive them thence although many of our men have been slain by them, & others cruelly wounded. I am of opinion (said the knight) that we receive them unto mercy, for it may be they are such men, ỳ for to have them again, the enemy will be glad to give king Armato in

change,

change, and return again into their country. Whereunto they all agreed, and therewith the Knight that had given them that counsel, made signs unto Esplandian that they would parley with them, whereby the assault ceased for a time, and the knight spake unto them in this maner, Sir knights, you see it is impossible for you to escape from hence, and it were great pity that two so baliant knights should die so young now in the flower of your ages. But this we will do, yield your selves, and we will save your lives. Sir knight (said Esplandian) if we die at this time, we are quit for ever after, but so much there wanteth thereof, and we have so good hearts and so sure a confidence in Jesus Christ, in whose quarrel we fight, that we hope he will give us means not onely to escape this danger, but to spoil the Town and lead you prisoners with us: Wherefore take this counsel for your selves, and yield you unto us before the wrath of God be further moved against you. When they that stood about them heard those words, both great and small began to cry with a loud voice, saying: Stay that villain, let him die, or we will die here at his feet: wherewith they assailed them so fiercely, that they were constrained to get upon the highest steps. But not long after they repulsed the enemy so baliantly with stones (whereof they found great quantity upon the Portal) that from that time forwards they had no longer stomacks to assayl them. But Norandel and the rest being without, understanding the noise and the voice of their companions, whom they esteemed dead or taken prisoners, determined to set fire on the gates, while the rest assailed the town: Wherewith every man ran to fetch wood, which the Alfarins perceived, but to conclude, they could not shun it, but whither they would or not, the Draw-bridge and the gates were set on fire: wherewith they were so abashed, that most part of them began to flie unto the great temple of Jupiter the principal place of strength within their City, the rest staying behind, with full determination rather to die then suffer the Christians to enter the Town. And seeing the gates burnt down, so many of them ran to fetch water, that not long after the Christians had means to assayl the town on that side, which assault continued so long that day failed, yet could they not

enter,

enter, by reason of the great resistance the Alfarins made, but the two Knights that were above did them so much hurt with blockes and stones, that not any of them durst appear, whereby the Christians became masters of the town. Wherein great number of people, both men, women, and children, were put to the sword, & more had died had it not bin night, specially on the water side where Gasti.lles and his army entred with most great fury. Nevertheless fearing lest the Alfarins should assemble again, and in the night they might be repulsed, he commanded a retreat to be sounded, being well assured the next day to have the town at their pleasure. And for the same cause he sent to the army on land that they should do the like: wherewith every man retired, setting watch in those places where most need required. The town in this sort being conquered, and the people gotten into the great temple of Jupiter. Esplandian minding not to lose the Princess Heliaxe, nor the Giant Foron, that he and Frandalo left with Carmelle, desired Grandalin and Lazinde to go fetch them, and with them he sent Sergil his Squire to bring them to the place, which they presently did, and made such haste, that they found her sitting by a great fire that Foron had made, where lighting off their horses & saluting Heliaxe, Grandalin said: Madam, my lord Esplandian prayeth you to come unto the place where he staveth for you. My friends (said she) I know him not, true it is I was brought hither by two Knights, whereof one is Frandalo that I have known long time, but for the other I assure you as far as I remember I never saw him before. Madam (said Carmelle) he is Son to the valiant Knight Amadis de Gaule, whose fame is spread so far about the world. Truly (said Heliaxe) I have heard of him so have you (as I think said Carmelle) of my Lord Esplandian his Son: for he alone conquered the castle the defended mountain, and now lately hath taken king Armato your father in law, and I can assure you he is one of the courteous knights living in the world. I am much abashed then (said she) how he shewed himself so uncourteous in my behalf, not speaking unto me while I was in his company, yet me thinketh being his prisoner, he could have done no less then comfort me, either with good speeches of fair promises, whereof he

hath used so few, that while I live I shall never think well of him. Madam (said Carmelle) you take the matter otherwise then it is, for if he refrained to speak unto you, it was by reason of the great acquaintance he perceived Frandalo to have with you, unto whom he is so great a friend, that he was not onely content to give him leave to entertain you, but much greater favor would he do unto him if he can. You may say what you will (said she:) Nevertheless, if he have no other excuse then that you alledge in his behalf, he shall never lose the disliking he hath gotten at my hands. Madam (said Gandalin) I am well assured he will amend that fault when it pleaseth you, wherefore I pray you determine what you mean to do, for he hath commanded us to do as pleaseth you: My friends (said Heliaxe) I would gladly sleep till it be day, then I will be ready to go where you think good, but I pray you tell me what noise it was I heard of late within the Town. Madam (said Lazinde) It is not yet three hours since the Town was taken by assault. God God (said she) what miserable fortune was that for the poor inhabitants, I think they are all put unto the Sword. No madam (said Lazinde) the greater part have saved themselves in the great Temple of Jupiter, but they will hardly escape when it is day, for our Generals are determined to burn the Temple. If it be so (said she) that Frandalo hath any credit with his companions, and that he that sent you be so courteous as this Gentlewoman report him to be, I hope they will take pity on the poor people: at least, if not for the love of them, I trust upon request for my sake they will not refuse it. And to the end I come not thither too late, I pray you when day appeareth let us presently depart, wherewith laying her down upon a cloke, she passed the rest of the night, not greatly to her ease.

CHAP. XXX.

How *Gandalin* and *Lazinde* brought the Princess *Heliaxe*, and the Giant *Foron* into the Town of *Alfarin* to *Esplandian* and *Frandalo*, and of the honorable entertainment they had.

HEliaxe that had not slept all that night, being grieved for the loss of the town of Alfarin, the ordinary abiding place

of

of Alphorax her husband, and withal the pleasantest and most delicious place of all Turky, perceiving day to appear, waked the two Knights, making her account if she might get into the town before the destruction of the temple, the people that were fled into it, (by her request and humble supplication to Esplandian and Frandalo) should be saved. With that they all mounted on their horses, and made such haste, that they entred into the town, as the Christians began to assault the fortress, and when Frandalo perceived the Princess Heliaxe, he rode unto her, bidding her God morrow, and taking her palfry by the bridle bareheaded, brought her to Esplandian and his company that did her great honor, knowing her to be a Kings Daughter, & wife to so great a Prince. With that she asked Frandalo which of them was Esplandian, Madam (said he, pointing unto him) here he is ready to do you any service that he can, as he hath assured me But when she perceived him to be so yong and of so great beauty, she was abashed to think how nature had furnished him with so many good perfections, especially of so great and incomparable force, wherefor he had the commendation among the most valerous Knights: wherewith she said unto Frandalo, In good faith I have heard him commended in divers places for one of the best Knights living in the world, and of mine own knowledge I have seen him, considering his yong years, so that if he abound as much in courtesie as he doth in valor and beauty, I think him to be the bravest Gentleman that may be found: which I shall presently see if he grant me one request. Madam (said Esplandian, blushing at the praises she used in respect of him) If I do it not, you shall be the first that ever I refused gift unto all my life: and considering your great beauty and most courteous behaviour, how should it be possible for me to disobay your will? I pray you then sir knight (said she) to pardon the poor people that are within the Temple, & grant them unto me, with leave to send them where I shall think good, not hurting them any more. In good truth madam (said Esplandian) you shall not be refused for so small a matter, and I will do so much with the other Knights, that they shall give consent, as also to your own liberty and the Giant Forons, to guide you where it pleaseth you, which

Frandalo did most earnestly at your hands before you arrived here: And for his sake look what else you will command at our hands, we are ready to perform it with all our hearts. For the which the Princess Heliaxe thanked him most heartily, & turning to Frandalo, said unto him: Sir Knight, the good that you and your companions do unto me, shal neber be forgotten on my part, but I will by all means seek to acknowledge the same, although presently I cannot do it: wherefore if it pleaseth you, cause your souldiers to retire, that these poor distressed people may come forth according to your promise: In the mean time I will go comfort them, for I am in doubt most part of them are rather dead then living: with that she desired Carmelle to bear her company, they two going to the Temple gate, which they found fast shut and rampired up: then she called so loud, that some of them spake unto her: but neber did men by pardon from their Prince, brought back again from the Gibbet, more rejoyce, nor were better comforted then they when they knew her, thinking the Prince Alphorax had made some agreement with their enemies. Wherefore they opened a little wicket, whereat she and the Gentlewoman entered into the Temple, they asking the Princess how it was her chance to come thither in so good a time to succor them, that looked for no other favor then most cruel death. My friends (said she) I have done so much with the Christians (by Frandalos means) whom I have known long time, that they are content to let you issue forth, your lives saved, and go where it pleaseth you, and my self likewise that had fallen into their hands as well as you: wherefore chuse whither you will follow me to Tesifant where my lord Alphorax is, who for my sake will shew you all the favor and courtelie he may. When the poor people understood the agreement made for them by the Princess Heliaxe, they all agreed to go with her, and not forsake her, giving her most hearty thanks for the good she had wrought them. Then (said Heliaxe) let those that have armor put it off, and come all forth with me. Then she being accompanied in that manner, came unto Esplandian, and shewed him great numbers of women & little children that stood about her, said unto him: I pray you sir knight behold the good whereof you

are

are the cause, and think what dammage it had been if these poor filly souls had suffered death for no offence, wherein you are worthy great commendations. And yet (said she, smiling) while I live I shall not forget the small account you made of me when Frandalo and you found me before my pabillion, after the overthrow of my Knights. Wherefore Madam (said Esplandian?) I marvel (said she) why you ask me such a question, seeing you might well conceive what grief I had in mind, yet did you not so much as once salute me, or use word unto me: in good truth it was but discourteously done of you. Madam (said he) I beseech you pardon me, for the fault I committed in your behalf, was not done for want of bringing up, but fearing to breed some jealousie in Frandalos mind, seeing him so much affected to do you service, together with the good countenance you shewed unto him, although you had lost your men. This excuse (said Heliaxe) is not to be accepted, neither shall you escape so easily therewith: which she spake with so good a countenance, that her seeming to be offended, contented all the company: wherefore Esplandian said unto her, Madam, I am content to make amends for this great fault, or to do what pennance it pleaseth you. The pennance (said she) that you shall have shall be, that according to the promise of mercy you have made unto these poor people, as also of favor in mine own behalf. you give us leave to go unto the City of Tesifant to my husband. that for the same we think the better of you. Madam (said Esplandian) you have already understood our minds. wherefore you may freely go whither it pleaseth you, and I my self will be your guide if it be your pleasure With that Heliaxe gave them many thanks, and taking her leave, got upon her palfrey, and being accompanied of Foron with a great number of the poor people, took the way that went to Tesifant, Frandalo going with her above a league and more, and further would have gone although he were woumded in divers places of his body, but she desired him to go back again. For (said she) although like a good & courteous knight you have had y means not onely to serve me, but also to save the life of me and mine, it may be I shall not have so the like to do the same for you if you fall into my Lord Alphorax hands: who as I think e're now

is

is advertised of my misfortune, whereby I am in doubt he is already in the field with great number of men to succor me. And if it should be so, I know him so impatient, that if he meet with you (being already moved with the loss of Alfarin, as all the injury my Knights have received, and my self likewise as he will suppose) the pleasure that you do me would breed a danger no further, but turn back again. Frandalo knew her counsel to be good, wherewith he committed her to God: leaving her in the guard of his cousin Foron, and therewith returned the same way that he came. It was then somewhat late, wherefore Heliaxe having travelled unto the adventurous fountain, and finding her pavillion as yet standing up, determined not to depart from thence till the next day in the morning, that she took the way that led to Tesifant. And having ridden till noon, she met the Prince Alphorax, with a great number of Knights that all night had stayed upon the way to the Castle the defended fountain, thinking those that had taken his wife would lead her thither, to have her in safe keeping, & such was their opinion & brought him news thereof. But they met not any man in the way, wherefore they returned again to go unto the adventurous fountain, much grieved when they perceived the Princess Heliaxe coming towards them, to whom Alphorax ran, and imbracing him with a loving kiss, asked her how she had escaped from the enemy. My lord (said she) when I shall have told you how, yet am I in doubt you will hardly believe it. And to say the truth, it seemeth fortune hath taken pleasure in one day to make me know both the good and evil she could do unto me. Then she shewed him of the overthrown of her Knights, the words that passed between Frandalo, Esplandian, and her: and lastly the honest entertainment they used in her behalf. Truly madam (said Alphorax) it is very strange, and I cannot imagin how these Christian dogs (having taken my Town of Alfarin by assault) having used so much humanity, not onely to these people, but have saved your honor, being such and so beautiful a Lady as you are. But it is to be thought, that our gods having compassion on me, have preserved you, as the thing I love and most estéem off in this world. Yet if I live but one year longer, I swear and promise unto you to assem-

assemble so many men together, that the City of Constantinople and her perjured Emperor shall suffer and indure much woe: in such manner, that the memory thereof shall not be extinct for one thousand years after my decease. Heliaxe that perceibed him enter into choller, to pacifie the same, answered him and said: My Lord, you may do it when it pleaseth you, but at this present you see here a great number of poor desolate people, I beseech you speak unto them, and comfort them as well as you may, for their whole trust is in you, with that Alphorax going unto them, gabe them many gracious and comfortable speeches, and with them returned to the City of Tesifant.

CHAP. XXXI.

How *Gastilles* took his leave of *Esplandian*, and sailed to *Constantinople*, and of the arrival of *Palomir*, *Bransil*, and other Knights of great *Britain* at the town of *Alfarin*.

The town of Alfarin brought under ỹ subjection of ỹ Knights of the Castle the defended fountain, as yet heard before, Gastilles having prepared himself to return to Constantinople, went unto Esplandian, and said unto him: My Lord, when I departed from the Emperor, he gabe me express commandment with all speed to advertise him what I had done, to the end he might determine either to come himself in person, if occasion serbed, with the army he is already preparing, or else wholly to break off his enterprise, for it now beginnineth to be Winter, and seeing (as it is Gods will) that your affairs on this side are in good estate, I am determined as to morrow to depart hence to Constantinople, that the Emperor understanding by me what hath passed on this side the Sea, he shall not be forced for this year to be at further charges, whereof before this time I had willingly certified him, had it not been the daily expectation I had to see the end of this our last enterprise, which God be thanked is fallen out as we desired. My lord (said Esplandian) seeing the Emperor (as you say) by your return may receibe both pleasure and profit, you shall do well to make haste thither: one thing I beseech you do for me, that is, most humbly to commend me unto his

his Grace, assuring him, that not any subject he hath, is, or shall be readier to obey him than my self: and as touching our proceedings, for that you have personally both seen and been an actor in the same, you can advertise him at large. Shew him likewise I pray you, that I keep King Armato as his prisoner, attending his pleasure what shall be done with him, but not the Castle of the defended mountain, for I have conquered the same in favor and under the protection of the Princess Leonorine, keeping the same at this present onely to her use and as her servant, as I mean to continue during life. But if it pleaseth his Grace to give the Town of Alfarin to Frandalo, not only thereby to increase his will and desire to serve him, but also for that he deserveth a greater reward: For doing, me thinketh he shall therein shew the part of a liberal Prince, considering the service he hath done and shewed in all places where he hath been employed: You shall tell the Emperor also, that according to my Fathers will and commandment, I hope shortly to be in Constantinople, to present my self before his Grace and the Lady Leonorine, as by the Gentlewoman Carmelle I have given thē to understand, wherewith I think you are not unacquainted, praying you in the mean time to make my excuse unto them, in that I have deferred it off so long; for in a manner you are not ignorant what hath been the cause. My Lord (said Gastilles) the Emperor my Uncle so much desireth your company, that I never saw man more grieved, nor woman, than the Princess my Cousin, when they perceived the great Serpent pass before Constantinople, to cross the Straights of Bosphore. I will shew them what you say, and in the morning about break of day, I mean, God willing, to set sayl. Will you not (said Esplandian) first go visit Frandalo, Manely, and others, that lie wounded in their beds, to know if they will send any message to the Emperor? That I will (said Gastilles.) So then (said Esplandian) and I will bear you company. With that they went to Frandalo's lodging, where they were no sooner entred, but the watch that stood upon the Tower over the water gate, discovered about three miles in the sea, a great Ship that with full sayl made towards the Town: whereby they advertised Gastilles, who presently

ſently cauſed two Brigandines to go forth to ſée if they were friends or enemies : and they were not long before they returned again with the great Ship in their company, wherein were Palomir, Branfil, Helian le delibere, Garvate du Val Craintif, Bravor ſon of the giant Balan that king Amadis had newly made Knight, Imoſel de Burgoigne, Ledarin de Faiarque, Liſtoran de la tour Blanche, Trion couſin to quéen Briolanie, Tentilles le Superbe, Guil le bein eſteme Grodonan brother to Angriote deſtravaux, and the two ſons of Iſamie Governor of the Firm Iſle, with many others that had imbarqued themſelves in great Britain, to go to aid Eſplandian: and coming to the Caſtle of the defended Mountain, they had intelligence by the fiſhermen at ſea, of the overthrow of Armatos naby, his captibity, and the taking of the City of Alfarin, whereat they much rejoyced, eſpecially when they knew by Gaſtilles ſoldiers that not any of their companions were ſlain in the aſſault. They being arrived at the Town, as they began to land, Eſplandian with divers others went thither to receive them: where between them were many ſalutations and welcomes given: which done, Eſplandian led them to his lodging, where they refreſhed themſelves about two hours before they went to viſit Frandalo, of whom Eſplandian gave ſuch commendations, that they deſired him to bring them where he lay, which he preſently did: but when Frandalo knew who they were (being aſhamed to ſée them uſe ſuch courteſie to him) could not well tell what to ſay: and as he entertained them, Palomir ſpake unto him, and ſaid: Sir knight, I and my company have heard ſo great commendation of your valor, that there is not one of us but would be ready to obey and ſerve you as our Chief Commander: wherefore, we beſéech you, uſe all diligence you may to be healed of your wounds, that we may preſently go into the field under your conduction. My Lords (ſaid Frandalo) I pray you pardon me, I am well aſſured that my valor is none ſuch as you report, whereby I deſerve not the praiſe you give me, neither did I ever any thing worthy commendation, but only by my Lord Eſplandians means. Nevertheleſs I hope, if God ſpareth me life and health, ſo to behave my ſelf, that all men ſhall know the deſire I have to do ſervice unto Chriſtendom,

and particularly unto every one of you. Companion (said Esplandian) I pray you take care to be cured of your grief: that done, we will take order for the rest: and for that these Knights are weary with their long travel on the Sea, I pray you give them leave for to depart, and in the morning we will visit you again. Which he said, fearing lest too much talk might cause him fall into a feber, for Gastilles before that had been debating with him above two hours together, touching the conference between him and Esplandian as concerning his return unto the Emperor. With that the Knights bad him farewel, and went out of the chamber: on the other side Gastilles made all haste he could to depart from thence the next day in the morning, and taking leave of all his friends, the same night he entred into his ship: & when day began to appear, he set sayl with so good winde, that within eight days he discovered the city of Constantinople, entring into the haven: which ỹ Emperor understanding, went to receive him, & going with him to the palace, asked him what he had done in his voyage, & whether Armato were retired from the siege or not. My lord (said he,) the good knight Esplandian & his company most humbly commend themselves unto your Grace, especially Frandalo, whom I can assure you to be one of the best servants that ever you had. With that the Empress accompanied with ỹ Princess Leonorine, Queen Minoresse, & divers other Ladies and Gentlewoman came thither, to whom Gastilles doing humble reverence, they bad him welcome, and because he staied to do Esplandians commendations to the Princess Leonorine, the Emperor said unto him: Truly nephew, you shall make an end, to shew us what hath happened in your voyage, then if it please you, you may court ladies. Wherefore I pray you tel from the beginning what you have done. My Lord (said he) at our departure from hence we had so good a winde, that without any let we arrived at the castle the defended mountain, yet could we not make such haste, but that Esplandian with his great serpent, and Frandalos ships had already drowned and overthrown certain of the enemies ships, and made the rest to flie, and the next day after king Armato was taken prisoner, his army overthrown and put to flight: but the sport was when I saluted the

Turk,

Turk, and that he knew me, then he told the great rage the Turk was in, the threatnings and speeches he used unto him, the overthrow of the twenty knights at the adventurous fountain, the skirmishes and assaults at the town of Alfarin, the danger wherein Esplandian and Frandalo found themselves, the taking of the town and of Heliaxe, her delivery with the peoples that fled to the temple of Jupiter, and how that before he imbarqued himself to return, a great ship arrived there from Great Britain with divers Knights therein, whose names and firnames he rehearsed, as having seen them with King Amadis. Further my Lord (said he) the good Knight Esplandian willed me to shew you that he keepeth King Armato till your Grace shall dispose of him, as also the City of Alfarin, but for the Castle the defended mountain, he saith he mindeth not to yield the same to any other then to y Princess Lecnorine, in whose name he hath conquered it, hoping as her servant and no other to defend the same. When will he be here (said the Emperor:) With all the speed he may (said Gastilles) as he hath promised me. In good faith (said the Emperor) I would it were this day before to morrow, I have so great desire to know him by reason of the great chivalry that daily increaseth in him, in such manner, that if heretofore the Knight with the Green Sword hath been esteemed the best in all the world, now his son diminisheth a great part of his glory. And all being well considered, I think that Amadis hath not done more in ten years time, then Esplandian hath accomplished in the space of ten weeks: But touching Frandalo, is he so well disposed to our service as you make report? My Lord (said Gastilles,) It is not possible to do better then he hath done: wherefore, my Lord Esplandian willed me to shew you, that for the better entertaining him in his proceedings, he is of advise that your Grace should give him the City of Alfarin, not knowing any man worthier then he to keep it. In good truth (said the Emperor) Esplandian and his companions have had the pains to conquer it, wherefore I am content they have the disposing thereof: Nevertheless, if they rest upon my consent therein, I am well content it shall be so, and I will not cease to shew him greater favor, if he persevere as he hath

began. And you Daughter (said he to the Princess Leonorine) what say you to this that my cousin Gastilles hath told you touching Esplandian, that saveth he keepeth the Castle the defended mountain for you onely? My Lord (said she) I know not how you and many others esteem so much of him, considering the small obedience he sheweth to his father, for if he were such a Knight as he is reported, he had long since come hither to acquit the promise wherewnto he is bound: which maketh me verily think, the speech Carmelle used of him, and all that he hath sent you by word of mouth by my cousin Gastilles, are onely but dissimulations. And I for my part am not yet determined (although he reporteth himself to be my knight) to accept him for the same, much less to pardon him before he comes in person to excuse his fault, then I will consider what I have to do. The Emperor that perceived his daughter speak with such a choler, & therewith to blush more then ordinary, could not refrain laughter, and said unto her: What daughter, do you refuse the service of the best Knight in all the world? I my Lord (said she) and so should every master his servant, when he flyeth from his presence, and obeyeth not his commandments no more then he hath done both yours and mine. Truly sweet heart (said the Emperor) I like you well, I would to God that nature had furnished you with a body like unto your heart, if she had, she had made you a perfect man, and not a woman as you are. Now nephew you bear my daughters answer, I pray you let Esplandian know it, that he may make haste hither, lest he lose not her good will. And although the Emperor spake it as in jest, Esplandian took it otherwise, when he heard the news by a Squire that Gastilles sent unto him.

CHAP. XXXII.

How *Frandalo* accompanied of fourscore Knights, issued out of *Alfarin* towards *Tesifant*, and of the taking of *Eiraca* Captain of the Town.

The Knights of Great Britain arrived in the Town of Alfarin, (as you heard before) Frandalo and others that were hurt

hurt being healed of their wounds, Belleris that ceased not continually to hearken after Alphorax, was advertised by his spies, that he continued in the City of Tesifant, which he and Branfil told unto the rest of their company, who therewith being somewhat incouraged, very earnestly desired Frandalo to lead them forth, and bring them to some place where they might lie in ambush to surprise Alphorax or some of his company if they chanced to stray abroad. Frandalo not willing to deny them any reasonable request, agréed (with the consent of Esplandian) to depart the next night following, and to take with them to the number of fourscore Knights and no more, which Esplandian liked well, he minding to be one. Whereupon those that were appointed for the journey prepared themselves, and about Sun-setting issued out of Alfarin, Frandalo and Belleris knowing ỹ country so well, that they néeded no other guides, but travelled strait towards Tesifant, and having ridden till eleven of the clock at night, they came unto a cross way, where Frandalo advised them to divide themselves in two companies, willing the Knights (that before that time had never bin in Turky) to hold close together. For (said he) the wars in these countries are far otherwise then they are in Great Britain, where Knights use most commonly to travel alone without company, and although they chance sometimes to ride in companies, the least occasion that happeneth maketh them separate themselves, but here those that use armes travel in great companies together, whereby the combates that are fought here most commonly are rather battels then incounters. And more then this, if three hundred Turks chance to surprise one hundred, thirty, twenty, or less number of their enemies, they take a pride to put them to death, preferring revenge before a certain kind of honor, that (as I have understood) is kept and observed in the West parts, where combates are in a manner equal. Wherefore my friends (said he) I pray you seperate not your your selves but march all in a company, assuring you that in the place whither we go, we shall not faile to finde men sufficient against whom we may imploy our forces, and shew what valour is in us. I know that within half a mile of Tesifant Alpho-

rax

rax uſeth oftentimes to lie at a houſe that he hath cauſed to be made, called Gruobinach, where if it be our good fortunes we may chance to finde him, wherefore I am of adviſe that we divide our ſelves in two companies, my nephew Belleris ſhall take the left hand, and lie in ambuſh nèer unto the village of Jentinomele, from whence he may eaſily perceive when any man iſſueth out of Teſifant, and I with Eſplandian and the other half of our company will follow this way that bringeth us unto a valley nèer to Gruobinach, where we will ſecretly ſtay if nèed require, to ſuccor each other: where unto they all agrèed: but before they departed thence, they found their enterpriſe to be far more dangerous than they eſtèemed it, as hereafter you ſhall hear. Belleris and his company leaving Frandalo, travelled ſo long, that about two hours before day they met ſix ſouldiers, whom Belleris ſaluted in the Arabian language, asking them of what place they were? My Lord, ſaid they, we are going to the town of Sraſſe. My good friends (ſaid he) we travel this night to Teſifant to advertiſe the prince Alphorax of the great dammage and deſtruction the Chriſtian dogs continually do, and within ſhort ſpace have done unto the country round about: for they are iſſued out of Alfarin, and have taken and carried away all they can find: and as yet are abroad, not ceaſing to execute all tyranny they can deviſe: nevertheleſs, if it pleaſeth him to give us aid, we know the place of their retreat, where we may eaſily incloſe them, & not one of them ſhall eſcape. What are you, ſaid the Souldiers, that bring us theſe news? Friends (ſaid Belleris) I am Rouſſan, couſin to Eiraca, chief captain of Teſifant. We can tell you good news of him, ſaid the Souldiers wherewith we think you will be well pleaſed: for he is not far from hence, being ridden out of Teſifant with two hundred Knights to go unto Falandy, to ſée the ſame be not ſo lightly ſurpriſed as Alfarin was. But becauſe he willed us to ride before, we will ſtay no longer: whereuith they bad them farewel. Friends (ſaid Belleris) the good fortune I wiſh you I pray God may happen unto you. With that the ſouldiers paſſed on their way, but they had not gone far when Belleris ſent after them, and fearing they would diſcover his enterpriſe,

cauſed

caused them to be slain: and therewith presently dispatched one of his Squires on message to Frandalo, to advertise him of the enemies being abroad with a very strong and huge company: whereupon he wished him to join with them. The Squire made all the haste he could, but before the news came to Frandalo, Belleris met with Eiraca and his company about the Village of Jentinomele, being upon them before they had time to put on their helmets. There did the Captain of Tesifant shew himself to be no young beginner in arms, for that like a valiant and hardy knight he entred among the Christians, and being seconded by his men, did most valiantly defend themselves, and assailed the enemy, although at their first encounter ten of their brabest soldiers were unhorsed and overthrown. And as Eiraca entered into the preasse., Norandel and he met together with such force, that Norandel was wounded in the left shoulder, but not sore hurt, and the Captain of Tesifant losing his stirrops, was thrown over his horse with so great strength, that with the fall he was forced to lie upon the ground, and could remove neither hand nor foot, which the Turks perceiving, to relieve their Captain, did so valiantly, that they overthrew four of the Brittish Knights, who nevertheless rose presently again, and with their swords in hand, thrust so many of the Turks horses into the sides and flancks, that in short space more than twenty of the Turks were overthrown likewise, and many slain outright: at that charge Enil and Gavarte were hurt, and the rest so hardly handled, that without Frandalos company that came to succor them, they had all been overthrown: and in truth they had almost strayed too long, but the squire that Belleris sent unto them, could not overtake them before they were in the valley where they should have met. And although they had heard the sound of their blowes, yet did they not suspect any such peril, until the squire had done his message; wherewith they ranne with all the speed they could unto the place; where Belleris and his companions (being out of breath) did nothing but receil, and defend themselves against their enemies blows, that had slain divers of them, but that the captain of Tesifant would have them to be taken and presented to the Prince Alphorax. Nevertheless,

leſs Frandalo, Eſplandian, and the reſt of their company, made them change opinion: for when they perceived their companions ſo hardly matched by the enemy, they entered among them with ſuch fury, that had it not been for Eiraca (who at that time behaved himſelf moſt baliantly) they had overthrown the Turks at their firſt on-ſet, but by reaſon of the great reſiſtance he made, they continued fighting half an hour after, wherein he maintained himſelf ſo well, that Eſplandian could never take him before he had overthrown him, and pulled off his Helmet, wherewith he yielded: mean time Frandalo and his companions being in the midſt of their enemies, laid ſo well about them, ſtaying horſes, pulling away ſhields, and doing ſo baliantly, that wonder it was to behold them, yet did not the Turks once ſeem abaſhed, but ſtill fought moſt courageouſly, until ſuch time they perceived their Captain taken priſoner, which cauſed them to flie and turn their backs: but not all of them, for there lay more then one hundred and fifty of them dead upon the ground, the reſt ſaved themſelves by means of the dark night. It was then about an hour before day: and Frandalo fearing that thoſe of Teſifant (hearing of the overthrow) would iſſue forth to cut off their paſſage, preſently cauſed Captain Eiraca to be remounted, and all the Chriſtians that wanted horſes, and with all ſpeed rode back again to Alfarin, not the ſame way they came, but another way, ſomewhat farther about; wherein they trabelled ſo long, that about Sun-riſing they entred into a great wood, where they alighted to refreſh both themſelves and their horſes: and ſtaying not long there leſt they ſhould be ſurpriſed, they made ſuch ſpeed, that about ſun-ſetting they arrived in the town: mean time news came to Teſifant of the overthrow of their men, wherewith Alphorax was in ſuch a rage, that in a manner he ſeemed deſperate. But for this time we have ſufficiently diſcourſed of Martial affairs, now we mean to bring Love in place, who deſiring to miniſter ſome comfort to the Princeſs Leonorine that lived in great pain, expecting the arrival of her friend Eſplandian, cauſed him to depart from Alfarin to viſit her in the City of Conſtantinople, as in the Chapters following you ſhall hear.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the great grief *Esplandian* had, understanding by the messenger that *Gastilles* sent unto him, what displeasure the Princess *Leonorine* had conceived against him.

YOu heard before how Gastilles shewed the Emperor what Esplandian had done, and what message he sent unto him, and to the Princess Leonorine, as also what answer she made, which Gastilles by his Squire writ and sent unto him, having charge from the Emperor so to do, thereby to procure his speedier Arrival in Constantinople. The Squire with his Letter made such haste, that he arrived at Alfarin about five days after the taking of Biraca, and meeting Carmelle at the gate, asked her if he might find Esplandian at convenient leisure to deliver him a Letter from Gastilles, but Carmelle being subtil, suspecting it to be some news from the Princess Leonorine, that might move Esplandian, who as then seemed discontent, answered him & said: My good friend, you can hardly speak with him at this time, but follow me and give me the letter, and I will present it unto him, and cause him to return you an answer. The Squire did as she willed him, and followed her to Esplandians lodging: where entring into his chamber, she found him sitting on his bed talking with the King of Denmark, and delibered him Gastilles letter, which when he read, the tears ran out of his eyes, and therewith cast forth a great sigh, saying: O Lord! but Carmelle that beheld him, doubting the cause to be as she suspected, asked him if he were ill at ease. Ill: said he, I that I am, and so ill that I would to God I were dead: and look I pray you, said he, whether I have cause or not: wherewith stretching forth his hand, he gave Carmelle the letter, and turning his face, began to make the greatest sorrow in the world: but when she had read the contents, she esteemed not thereof, but said unto Esplandian: What my Lord? are you abashed at so small a matter? By my soul I now perceive very well, that the affections and lobes of men are far different and much unlike the passions that we simple women endure, when we fall into the like extremities: and know

you how: you men do most commonly take pleasure to manifest and make known your love either by word of mouth or outward shews, and many times dissemble more than you mean to do: and which is worse, how much the more the Lady or Gentlewoman you love is of great desert, or high linage, so much more glory do you take to make it known, not onely that you bear her affection, but that you are beloved and favored of her above all others: which is clean contrary to the nature of women (I mean such as may be tearmed wise and of good understanding) for how much the greater their parentage is, so much more fear they have to manifest their amorous passions, in such manner, that most commonly both in word, gesture, and countenance, they outwardly deny that which they have most deeply engraved in their hearts and mindes: and not without good cause, for that the thing which redoundeth to your praise and commendations (as you think, which is the manifesting of your love) breedeth to them a certain spot in their honor, which oftentimes they can not easily deface. Wherefore it is more than expedient, to observe this modesty and constancy in us, not that I mean to restrain my self unto this law, seeing that all my glory and felicity dependeth upon you, in such manner, that I desire no greater happiness in this world, then that the love and dutiful obedience I bear unto you, should be published and made known unto the world, to the end that all those that shall hear of your great valor and my mean estate, may know my great good fortune, to have the mean to serve you as I do. Wherefore my lord, in my opinion you ought to take the speeches Castilles hath written unto you, to be used by the Lady Leonorine in good part and greatly to your advantage, for I dare warrant you on mine honor, that your affections are both alike: and to say the truth, she hath behaved her self most wisely to dissemble the matter so well as she hath done in the Emperors presence. I deny not but she hath some cause to be impatient, considering the message I delivered unto her in your behalf, but that is easie to be cured: and although the love she hath born you so long time should be wholly extinguished (which I can hardly believe) even as a bone that is broken in two pieces and set together again, is stronger

in that place than in any other part, so being there and in her company, shall win that you finde broken and by that means make it stronger than ever it was before. Therefore I am of advice (that fulfilling her desire) you go unto her, and that as soon as possibly you may. Alas Carmelle (said Esplandian) what good or what service did I ever do unto her, thereby to have deserved at her hands the least favor among an infinite number I have received from her? Especially by the report of your own mouth. If therefore she hath just occasion to be offended with me, having offended her so much, can I hope for any other at her hands than meer disdain and mortal hatred? My Lord (said Carmelle) I am a woman, and know the nature of women better than you do, or then all the men in the world besides, I pray you therefore believe me, and go and see her, and if so be she entertain you not according to your desire, then never give credit to my words again. In faith my good companion (said the King of Denmark) Carmelle giveth you so good and wise counsel, that either you ought to give credit to her speech, or else wholly drive this fantasie out of your minde, considering (as is most true) that sometimes, and very often, how much the more fervent and extream the love of a woman is, so much the sooner is it dead and wholly extinguished, for that their inconstancy is such and so great, that for the least occasion in the world they are ever ready to love, and much more inconsiderately do they forget the same again: not that I accuse the Princess Leonorine of so great lightness, but to say the truth as commonly we finde, and for my part I know not upon what occasion you ground your love, whereby you should make so much account of her, seeing y she never saw you, nor you her, but are only content to conceive well of each other upon a certain renown that hath spred abroad, & set forth the great perfections y are reported to be in you both: which in truth may be compared to a fire made of straw, that is no sooner kindled but presently consumed: wherefore be not then so much abashed if the Princes Leonorine shew her self at this present so smally affected towards you, for those that love most dearly, do oftentimes fall into discourtesies and coldness of affection, that they disdain, or (at the

leaſt) in the twinkling of an eye, wholly forget thoſe that for a long time they have loved moſt intirely, and that for their ſakes ſhall have hazarded their lives in moſt dangerous adventures. Did you never hear how Briſarde behaved her ſelf in regard of Troilus, after the deſtruction of Troy, ſhe loved him ſo well that ſhe would néeds die in his arms: when ſhe was conſtrained to forſake him, the Grécks thinking verily ſhe would have ſlain her ſelf: and yet was ſhe ſcarſe iſſued out of Troy but ſhe wholly forgot her love Troilus, and tranſported that vehement love ſhe had born him all her life, to Diomedes King of Thrace. O God! What inconſtancy? what lightneſs? what foundation upon a ſandy ground was that? This unconſtant woman among other precious ornaments given her by Troilus her friend, had a pair of perfumed globes, which within one hour after her captivity ſhe gave unto her new friend Diomedes in token of the love and amity ſhe bare unto him. What had Troilus ſaid then if he had bin preſent? would he have believed her? I think not. And what a point of honeſty, I pray you, did Clitemneſtra ſhew unto her huſband, when in ſteed of welcoming him home at his coming from the ſiege of Troy, where he had remained ten years together: ſhe cauſed him cruelly to be murdered by Egiſtus her ruffian. But will you hear more examples of the like matter? and as he began to proceéd, Eſplandian ſaid unto him, My good friend, I pray you do not this wrong unto my lady Leonorine, but let me here your counſel how I may from henceforth govern my ſelf to ſatisfie her deſire. Go and ſée her, ſaid the king, and if you think good, I will bear your company. Shall we go and leave our companions? (ſaid Eſplandian) that will I never do: wherefore? ſaid the King: are not Frandalo, Manley, and the reſt of their company ſtrong enough to defend the town in your abſence? I am of adviſe that you ſend preſently for them, & give them to underſtand that by reaſon of certain news you have of late received, you muſt be conſtrained to leave them for the ſpace of eight or fifteen days: and in like ſort diſpatch Caſtilles ſquire, and write unto his maſter, that you thank him heartily for ỳ good remembrance he hath had of you, and that with all ſpéed you will ſend a meſſenger expreſly unto the Emperor with an anſwer to that it hath pleaſed

him

him to command to be written unto you: in the mean time, I will take order to prepare a ship to bring us to the castle the defended mountain, where we will imbarque our selves in the great Serpent, that will not faile (as I think) to bring us unto Constantinople, and determine with your self what company you mean to take with you. My good friend (said Esplandian) do as you think good, I am content to hazard my life in your hands. It sufficeth (said the King) but I pray you speak unto our companions, and dispatch the squire. With that Esplandian called for ink and paper, and wrote unto Gastil es as the king of Denmark had advised him. Next day in the morning Frandalo and the rest of the company came into his chamber as they used ordinarily to do, and being together debating of divers things, Esplandian said unto them: My good friends, I am constrained to leave your company for the space of fifteen days or three weeks, to go about certain urgent affairs that import me much: I will take with me my brother the King of Denmark, Gandalin, Enil, Carmelle, and no more. I pray you think it not strange, for if I were not constrained thereunto, I swear unto you of my faith, I would not do it. There was not any among them that once would ask him whither he went, but answering him, said: That he might go whither it pleased him, and that they for their parts would keep the place till he came again, although he staid a whole year before he returned: by this means Esplandian by little and little framed himself to take his voyage. while the king of Denmark caused the ship that brought the knights of Great Britain thither, to be made ready, and upon a munday in the morning Esplandian and his company imbarqued themselves to sayl unto the castle the defended mountain, but they were no sooner put to sea, but the wind falling contrary, ℔ Sea rose so high and so furious withal, that neither mast, sail, nor cord could hold, but brake all in pieces: in which manner they continued for the space of ten days, and as many nights, so that neither master nor marriners could tell in what part they were, for that during that time, the clouds were so thick and the mist so great, that it made the air so dark and obscure, that those that were in the Ship, could scarce see one the other, expecting nothing else

(without

(without the mercy of God) then the overthrow of their ship: which they thought verily had happened, when they arrived at the rock of the Enchantress, whereupon they were driven about three of the clock after midnight: wherewith the sailers cast anker, and going on land, stayed till day appeared.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How *Esplandian* and his company went up unto the broken pallace of the Enchantereſs, and of the ſtrange things they found there.

ESplandian and his company being on land, not knowing the place where they were arrived, cauſed a great fire to be made, about the which they thought to lie down and ſleep, but they heard ſuch a noiſe from the top of the Rock, that they were all abaſhed: with that the winde began to ceaſe, and the Sea to wax calm, the ſky ſhewing full of Stars, and withal the Moon ſhone ſo bright, that it ſeemed as light as if it had bin day: wherefore Eſplandian deſirous to know what the noiſe might be, determined to mount up the Rock, but he was counſelled by his company to ſtay till the next day in the morning. When Eſplandian knew it certainly to be the Rock of the Enchantreſs, he ſaid unto the King of Denmark: I good truth I think I have been here before, and take it to be the place whither the great Serpent brought me the ſame day I received the order of Knighthood, which putteth me in better hope of our voyage then I had before: which he ſaid, remembring the ſcroll with the propheſie that he found in the lions paw. Then he told the King of Denmark how he conquered the Sword he bare, the death of the Serpent, and all that he had ſeen upon the Rock, and it is called (ſaid he) the Rock of the Enchantreſs. By God (ſaid Gandalin) you ſay true, for I remember, that purſuing after a knight that led a Gentlewoman away, I found your father king Amadis and Grandafor here, and the knight likewiſe that I ſought that had hidden himſelf in the old pallace upon this Rock: then he told them from point to point what had happened unto him, and the great love the knight bare unto the gentlewoman he had carried away by force, but (ſaid he) before we departed ſhe

agreed

agréed with him, and they promised marriage to each other, although before that time she hated him most deadly: nevertheless, understanding that the force he used unto her was onely done for the love he bare her, she clean forgot her former hatred, changing it to a most exceeding love. In good faith (said Carmelle) as far as I perceive, no man ought to despair of any thing he taketh in hand, no more will I during my life: which she said in respect of Esplandian, who in time as she thought might love her, and wholly forget the Princess Leonorine. And so long they talked, that day began to appear, then Esplandian said to the King of Denmark: Companion, I pray you stay here for me while I go up, for I will have no body with me but Gandalin and Enil, and they shall go with me, not that I fear any danger that may happen unto me, but onely because they may help me to lift up the tomb whereof I told you even now. My Lord (said the King) I pray you offer me not so much injury, for I will not leave you though it cost me my life, especially in this place where I have most great desire to see that I never saw before. Seeing it is your pleasure (said Esplandian) let us go, and let our Squires bring some victuals with them, if we need to eat before we come back again: which the Squires did, wherewith they began to mount up the Rock, and travelled so long, that about Sun-sitting they came unto the hermitage, where the great image was erected, whereof you heard before, where they stayed all night, the next day they travelled again, and came unto the lake that ran before the old pallace, and because it began to be dark, they determined not to travel any further for that time, and to say the truth they were weary: but all night the serpents that issued out of their holes to drink of the water, ceased not to hiss and pass before and about them to assail them, which they had not failed to do, had it not been for the vertue of Esplandians Sword, whereunto no venomous things might once approach or come near. Nevertheless they rested not, but as soon as they might see, rose up and went on their way: and passing by the ruinated monuments, they came unto the palace of the Enchantress, where they found the gates shut, whereat Esplandian gave so great a blow with his foot, that they opened, and

they

they entred into the place where the shining tomb stood with the Lion upon it. Then Esplandian said unto the three Knights: In good faith when I was here before, I could not lift up this plate, I pray you each man prove what you can do, then I will see if I be grown stronger in the back then I was at that time: wherewith the King of Denmark assailed to do it, but what strength so ever he used, it was impossible for him, the like did Gandalin and Enil, but they sped no better then the King, whereat Esplandian began to laugh, and taking it by the two ends, lifted it up so easily as if it had been a piece of dry wood, yet was it a piece of Christal of three fingers thick, and about ten or twelve foot long: under it they found an azure stone, the fairest and most orient colour that ever was seen that covered a Ceder chest, which smelt as sweet as any Balm, the Chest being shut with a lock of Emerald-stone, having a key of Diamonds that hung by it at a Chain of fine Gold, all most artificially composed: the stone taken up and the Chest opened, they found the Image of Jupiter lying therein all of massy Gold, garnished with many Pearls, Rubies, and other inestimable rich Jewels, especially a Crown that he ware on his head, about the which were placed certain Carbuncles in form of Greek Letters, with these words.

Jupiter is great God of all Gods, and in his right hand he bare a Table containing this prophesie, When time shall come, that my art and knowledge shall faile, the heart of the hand inclosed herein, and life restored by them that were the cause of death, the Grecian sheep long time nourished in pleasant pastures, shall be constrained to feed on a herb bitterer then Gaul, by meanes of the extremity the hungry Sea-Wolves shall put them unto, whose number shall be so great, that they shall cover the Sea in divers places, in such wise, that the poor sheep inclosed in their great Forrest, and divers of their lambs being dead and torn in pieces, their shepheard (having in a manner lost all hope of restoring them again,) with anguish of heart and mind, in abundance of tears shall lament their great misfortune. Then shall come the brave Lions whelp, by whose means the great troop of wolves shall be driven away and destroyed. Nevertheless, he

shall

ſhall take from the ſhepheard his great power, and the beſt beloved of his ſheep, whereupon he ſhall ſeize, in ſuch ſort, that his ſtrong teeth and ſharp clawes ſhall enter into her heart, and the entrailes of her body, the reſt of the flock reſting in the power and government of him and his fierce company, whereby not long after it ſhall come to paſs, that the great deceitful Serpent, the Inchanted Sword, and this high Rock, ſhall ſink into the bottom of the Sea, and ſhall never after be ſeen again of any man.

But although Eſplandian underſtood the Greek tongue, yet could he not gibe any interpretation or expoſition to this propheſie, no more could any of his company: wherefore they determined, not to ſtay long about the ſame, but were more buſied to behold the ſtones and great riches they ſaw within the tomb, which they determined to take with them, and return unto their ſhips without ſtaying any longer, for their victuals began to fail: wherefore Eſplandian willed Carmelle to take the Lion, he and the king of Denmark took the plate of Chriſtal, Gandalin and Enil the azure ſtone, and the Squires the Ceder Cheſt with the Image of Jupiter. And in that ſort they iſſued out of the pallace, deſcending down the rock, till about ebening they came unto the hermitage, where they ſtayed all night: the next day they went on till they found their ſhip, wherein about Sunſetting they imbarqued themſelves: and becauſe Eſplandian would not be ſeen in Conſtantinople without the great Serpent, he commanded the maſter of the Ship to direct his courſe to the caſtle called the defended mountain, which he did. But having ſailed about two days and more, as the King of Denmark ſat talking with Eſplandian about the Letter that was ſent unto him, he asked him if he thought not good that he ſhould make a voyage unto the Princeſs Leonorine to underſtand the truth of her affection towards him. For (ſaid he) it may be Gaſtilles hath miſtaken her words, or the Emperor himſelf hath commanded him to write unto you in ſuch ſort, that thereby you ſhould make the more haſte to go thither: at the leaſt I ſhould know of her what her pleaſure is, and how you ſhall govern your ſelf in reſpect of her. Ha my good friend (ſaid Eſplandian) you have

touchȝt me now euen at the quick, if you would do me so much fabȝr, you shall bind me forȝ ever unto you: mean time I will stay forȝ you in the gulf where I found you with Frandalo, when we raised the siege of the castle the defended mountain. Assure your self (said the King) I will do my good will. There was belonging to their ship a little Pinnace, which the master took with him (besides the boat) to save himself and his people if any tempest should happen, wherein the King with certain marriners to guide him entred, and taking their leave of Esplandian, sailed forȝwards with so good a winde, that in shorȝt space they lost the sight of the great ship. But the nexȝt night following there happened such a tempest, that at the breaks of day their Pilot knew not where he was, and without knowledge of the place he was constrained to abandon the Pinnace unto the mercy of the wabes, which continued forȝ the space of forȝty days together, in which time they indured so many forȝtunes, ȝ it would be ober-tedious to recount them, and we should likewise digress from the matter whereunto we are entered, to bȝing our Histoȝy unto an end. Let it therefoȝe suffice you to know, that their victuals being spent, they chanced to arrive in the Island of the Giant Drapheon, where the King of Denmark and his squire lost their wits and became mad, by foȝce of a water that they dȝunk out of a fountain called the fountain of Forgetfulnes, that spȝang in that Isle, where they were taken and kept in a cruel pȝison, from whence in shorȝt time after they were delibered by the meanes of a Gentlewoman that fell in lobe with the King, and caused him to recober his health, armes, hoȝse, and a ship, with all things necessary forȝ himself and his Squire, and baving done, she with them put to Sea: and coasting the country of Trebisane, they came unto an Island where the people of the countrey would babe burnt a Gentlewoman because she could not finde a Knight forȝ to maintain her quarrel: but the King fought forȝ her, and obercame him that accused her, and taking the Gentlewoman with him, put to Sea again, and sailing sȝx days together along the coast, he perceibed a maid out of a tower, wherein the Lord of that countrey kept her pȝisoner, forȝ the cause which she declared to the King out of a windobe that

kelod

looked into the Sea, for whose sake the king took land to fight with the Lord till he delibered the poor Gentlewoman out of prison: such were the adventures of the King of Denmark, which are rehearsed at large in the great Chronicles, that master Elizabeth wrote not long after the Coronation of Esplandian: wherein the prowess and adventures of the Brittish knights and others remaining at Alfarin, are likewise registred and orderly set down. For this time content your selves to understand the manner how and in what sort Esplandian and the Princess Leonorine saw each other, how afterward Urganda came to Constantinople, of the armies both by Land and Sea, of the cruel battel between the Turks and Christians: which ended, our History likewise shall be finished, but having many things to describe, before I come to that point, we will return to Esplandian, that was not smally abashed at the long absence of the King, expecting from day to day some news of him, that had left his company onely for the cause you heard before.

CHAP. XXXV.

How *Esplandian* having stayed *Garinter* King of *Denmarks* return about two weeks space, and perceiving no news of him, determined (by the counsel of *Carmelle*) to go in person to the City of *Constantinople*.

AFter that Garinter King of Denmark had set saile towards Constantinople as it is said before, Esplandians ship arrived at the gulf where he promised to stay, & they lay at anker for the space of two weekes, not hearing any news of his desired message: wherewith he doubted either that the King of Denmark should be drowned, or that fortune had carried his vessel some other way: wherefore he thought to send one of his marriners to enquire of him. But before he did it, he determined first to speak with Carmelle, and taking her aside, said unto her: My great friend, you know for what cause the King of Denmark left us, and the reason of his voyage, as also the promise he made unto me to return again with all speed, but we can hear no news of him at all, which maketh me assuredly believe either he is dead, or that the storm he was in hath cast

him in some countrey so far off, that he cannot by any means do as he hath promised, wherefore I pray you give me your advice what I were best to do: for those that are in the like mind that I am, although in some things they have their understandings whole and perfect, yet are they commonly to seek in that which concerneth them as touching those points. My lord (said she) seeing it is your pleasure to use my counsel, I wil tel you truly what I think therein, and so much I can assure you, that if you should search throughout the world, you shall hardly find one that can come nèer me in judging the passion wherewith you are molested: for the same is in me that is in you, and I fèel it as well as you do, and it may be more, but the ease and great contentment I receive by your presence, hath given me so many remedies, that I delight in my grief, and live not, but only to cause my sorrow to indure. To tell you truth, at such time as you began to use spèeches unto me of the king of Denmark, I thought upon his long absence, and me thinketh it were best we sailed unto Constantinople, assuring you that I have devised a means to bring you unto the Princess Leonorine, whereby you may both sèe and speak with her, without being known of any other then her self, if you think it good. And to bring it to pass, (we being arrived there) it shall be necessary that all those of our ship be advertised (if any man asketh for you) to say, that you stayed in the castle the defended mountain, mean time you shall lie in the bottom of the ship, and I with Gandalin and Enil, will go unto the Emperor, to whom I will say that you sent me to the Princess Leonorine, to present unto her in your behalf, that which you have conquered in the Rock of the Enchantress, and for the rest let me alone. When Esplandian heard her speak in that manner, he beheld her for a while, and at last said unto her: My good friend, I fear not death, neither can it be more bitter or sharper unto me then the life I now indure: but I fear the dishonor of my Lady, and the injury that thereby I might do unto the Emperor, who by his courtesie hath so much bound my father unto him, as if I should wrong him, it would be a blemish to my honor while I live. Nevertheless, I am content to hazard my self in all the dangers you shall think convenient: that is sufficient

ent (said Carmelle) I pray you then be merry and make good chear: for if ever woman accomplished the thing she took in hand I will bring this to pass. Wherewith leaving Esplandian, she called the Patron, and willed him to set sayl for Constantinople, whereunto he obeyed, and had so good a winde, that within three days after they entered into the haven: where being arrived, Esplandian told his men what (by the counsel of Carmelle) he had determined to do, commanding them expressly not to make it known to any man of his being there, but that they should say they left him in the castle the defended mountain. For (said he) I am not now in such estate as I would be to present my self before so great a Prince as the Emperor is. And to the end you be not found liars, I will stay in the bottom of the ship till you return again: then he, Carmelle, Gandalin, and Enil spake together, where the gentlewoman shewed them at large how she meant to bring her enterprise to pass, I will presently (said she) cause the tomb we brought from the Rock of the Enchantress to be set up in the same sort we found it, upon the hatches of the ship, then will I go tell the Emperor that I have one of the singularest things abord that ship that ever was seen, and we finde means to bring him hither, where I will shew him the Lion with Jupiter, and all the rest of the furniture, which having seen and perused, I will tell him that you send it to the Princess Leonorine, He being gone unto his palace, you shall go into the Cedar Chest, and so will I cause you to be carryed into the princess chamber lying in the same, whereof I will secretly advertise her, and by this means she may speak to you, and you to her what you think good. But (said Esplandian) tell me how I shall come out again? I will desire her (said she) to give me the Cedar Chest, therein to bury the body of Matroco that died a Christian, wherein you shall be inclosed, and to morrow in the morning I will cause you to be brought hither again. By God (said Gandalin) it is the prettiest devise that ever I heard, & now I confess that I was never but a fool in regard of Carmelle. Meddle you not with any thing (said she) but rest content, let me alone to work my will, and to the same end let us presently begin: then Esplandian went down into the bottom of the ship, and

the

the gentlewoman prepared the tomb as she had determined before: with that she, Gandalin, and Enil, landed and went unto the Emperor, whom they saluted most honorably, but Carmelle did him no reverence: for (as it is said before) she estéemed not of any man living, how great a Prince soever he were, but only of Esplandian: she and Gandalin were known in Constantinople by reason of their being there before. Wherefore the Emperor received Gandalin very courteously, and with smiling countenance said unto him: Friend Gandalin, although your presence hath procured great melancholly in my minde, remembring I have often séen you here with the man, that in all Christendom I most entirely love, whom I am utterly perswaded I shall neber sée again, yet you are heartily welcome, and I pray you tell me how doth the knight with the Grèen Sword. My Lord (said Gandalin) it is long since I left him to come into this country, nevertheless I am assured wheresoever he is, he is a prince ready to do your Grace any pleasure he can. In good faith (said the Emperor) I believe it well, and I am glad of the honor I understand he hath received at the hands of King Luisart, that voluntarily hath deposed himself of all Princely dignity to invest him therewith. My Lord (said Enil) that is true, I can assure your Grace thereof, as one that was present as his Coronation: and although I could wish king Amadis the Monarch of all the world, Truly when I beheld the gesture and humble countenance of good King Luisart, I could not refrain wéeping, for compassion I had to sée him, and not I onely, but all the people that beheld him. I pray you, Sir knight (said the Emperor) shew me how it was, for that all wise men are bound not onely to enquire of all vertuous actions, but also to imitate them as nèer as possibly they may: with that Enil shewed him at large the whole order of the same, as you heard it before. Whereat the Emperor (holding down his head) mused for a while, and then said: I am certainly perswaded it will be long before we finde a better Prince then king Luisart is, or one that hath passed his yong years with more wisdom and magnanimity of courage, and as I understand, both fortune and vertue have bèen favorable unto him: fortune in giving him force to overcome and obtain honor against di-

vers

bers misfortunes and hard adventures that she her self had prepared for him: and herine, for that in the end of his days she hath set him in the way to enter into paradise. And leaving that discourse: he changed purpose and spake to Carmelle, of whom in jest he asked, if she were still tormented with the extream passions of love towards Esplandian as she had been in times past. My Lord (said she) if there be any change since I spake with you, it is, that the love, servitude, & affection I bear unto him, are augmented in me, and daily more and more increase. Whereat every man began to laugh. In good faith (said the Emperor) we may then very wel perswade our selves, that you came not to our Court to move any of our Gentlewomen to love the good knight your master, although he should expressly command you to do it. My Lord (said she) you judge as in reason it ought to be, nevertheless I take so great a pleasure in serving him to his contentment, that I will except no service whatsoever: and to speak truth, my arrival here is to ask your Grace a gift, neither gold nor silver, but onely that it would please you to go unto the haven, to see a present that my Lord Esplandian sendeth to the princess Leonorine as her knight. In good truth (said the Emperor) you require a thing at our hands, that we should rather desire at yours. Come then my Lord (said she) for I may not stay long here. With that the Emperor (accompanied of divers Noble men) went unto the haven, and being there entred into Carmelles ship, she shewed him the christal tomb, then that of azure stone, and lastly the Image of Jupiter: whereat the Emperor staied longer to behold it than the rest, not so much for the richnes thereof, as to read the prophecy it held: and having read it, was not a little abashed: which Carmelle perceiving, spake unto him and said: My Lord, all this you see hath continued above two hundred years in the broken palace of the inchantress, yet in all that time not any knight (how valiant soever he were) could ever conquer the same, nor yet so much as see it, until my lord Esplandian arrived there, that is become Lord and possessor of the same, as you now behold. Truly (said the Emperor) it is the goodliest present that ever I saw, and worthy the greatest admiration: for although it be of incomparable riches, yet do I estéem it of no

value

balue in reſpect of the great ſcience and wonderful knowledge that was in her to whom it firſt belonged, as ſhe maketh it well appear by the threatnings ſhe uſed againſt us in this table: God grant all may fall out better than I doubt it will. My Lord (ſaid Carmelle) although it be ſuch as you eſteem it, yet do I fear that my Lady your Daughter will not make ſo much account thereof, that in recompence of the ſame ſhe will acquit the good knight Amadis and the maſter that I ſerve, of the promiſe they have made unto her. I know not that (ſaid the Emperor) but I am well aſſured, that no earthly treaſure can be comparable unto the valor and vertue of your maſter: neither will I ever give my conſent that Leonorine ſhall make that exchange, as deſiring the company of Eſplandian, much more than to have all the treaſures in the world within my coffers: and with good reaſon, for that the wickedeſt perſon living on ỹ earth may be rich of gold and ſilver, but not of vertue, which is not abundant unto any but to thoſe that ſeek it: wherefore if you think good, carry your preſents back again, for Eſplandian cannot be acquitted unto us, but onely by his preſence. My Lord (ſaid Carmelle) I am commanded to leave them with the Princeſs Leonorine, whether it be upon that condition or not: and if it be your pleaſure (ſeeing ſhe is not come hither with you) I will cauſe it to be carryed into her chamber. My daughter (ſaid the Emperor) is with her mother the Empreſs about a mile hence to take the air, when ſhe cometh home you may preſent it unto her, and aſſure your ſelf ſhe will not refuſe it: not ſo much for the value thereof, as for the good I wiſh to him that ſent it her, as ſhe knoweth full well. Wherewith he departed out of the ſhip, and being a land walked towards his pallace, not without much talk with his knights and noble men, touching the excellency of the tomb. Which the more they ſpake of, the more they eſteemed it, in ſuch manner, that they all acknowledged never in their lives to have ſeen ſo rich nor ſo ſingular a preſent.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How *Esplandian* was put into the Cedar Chest, and with the tomb carryed into the Princess *Leonorines* Chamber, and what conference they had together.

THe Emperor and his company gone as it is said before, Carmelle called Esplandian, that in the mean time lay in the bottom of the Ship, and told him the manner of their proceedings, as also the speech the Emperor had with Gandalin and Enil, and all what had happened, as it is before rehearsed By my soul (said Esplandian) I was never in the like pain, for hearing all you speak, onely the Lady Leonorine, I could not tell what to think: but when the Emperor told you she was not in the City, believe me, it comforted my heart. Did not I play my part well? said Carmelle. That you did, and as well as one could wish, (said Esplandian) and if it be true which is commonly said: That a good beginning makes a good ending, I hope I shall not fail to bring my purpose to pass. And while they devised together it waxed night, so that the Empress returned into the City: which Carmelle understanding, caused Esplandian presently to lie down in the Cedar Chest, in such sort, that the air entred therein on all sides, and covering it with the Azure and Christal Stones, Gandalin, Enil, and their Squires took the tomb, and with the Gentlewoman went out of the ship and came unto the pallace, where they found the Lady Leonorine (being already advertised of the goodly Present sent her by Esplandian) in great devotion staying for Carmelle, for it had been told her, that in the evening she would bring it to her lodging: wherefore she had no sooner espyed it, but she (with many other Ladies and gentlewomen no less curious to behold ỹ same) met her in the hall. With that Carmelle (perceiving her come) stepped forwards, and doing reverence unto her, said: Madam, the good knight Esplandian sendeth you this Present, that not long since he conquered in the Rock of the Enchantress, according to the good fortune and happy destiny above hundred years past predestinated of him: which he sendeth unto you, expresse to give

you to understand the great desire that daily more and more increased in him to be your faithful Knight. But before you proceed further, it is convenient you grant me two requests: the one, that neither you nor any other shall look into the tomb until the morning that I return again with the key to open a Cedar chest, that you shall finde therein: the other, that after you have opened it you shall give it me, to carry with me to the place, where my father keepeth his hermitage, therein to bury the bones of Matroco that died a Christian, as you have understood. Carmelle my friend (said the Princess) that am I content to do: nevertheless I am much abashed why Esplandian deferreth the time so long before he cometh to see the Emperor. Madam (said she) I will tell you that to morrow: mean time, I pray you, determine where you will have our men to set down their charge. In the Great Hall (said Leonorine) that my Gentlewomen may see it at their ease. In faith Madam, you shall pardon me (said Carmelle:) this place is too open and over common to leave so precious a thing standing therein: I deny not to let them have the pleasure to behold it, but having seen it, for the more safety it shall be set into your own chamber, whereof you and none other shall have the key. With that they that bare the tomb, entered into the hall and set it down, till Leonorine and the rest of the Gentlewomen had beheld it long: and if Carmelle had not been there, assure yourselves it had been better visited than it was: but she would not depart from thence till it was shut up. Which done, taking her leave, as she went out she took the Princess aside, and giving her the key of the Chest wherein Esplandian lay, said unto her: Madam, I leave you in this tomb two inestimable treasures, although their difference be great, as you may well perceive you being alone: for it is sure, that under this key lyeth the thing, that in all the world you most desire to see: and without staying Leonorines answer, she went out of the chamber, and with Gandalin and his company returned to the ship, leaving the Princess in a marvellous doubt by reason of the words she used unto her: & therewith did so certainly perswade her self, that her friend Esplandian lay dead within the same, that she was constrained to cause all her gentlewomen to

depart

depart the chamber, onely Quéen Minoresse that stayed to bear her company: with that she threw her self on the bed, and almost drowned in tears, began to make the greatest sorrow in the world. Quéen Minoresse abashed at so sudden alteration, knew not what to think, but perceiving her grief to increase still more and more, went unto her and said: Madam, I pray you hide ỹ cause of this sorrow from me no longer, for I swear unto you of my faith, if by any means I may relieve the same, I will deal therein as for my self. Leonorine that never ceased sighing, could not answer her one word, but with much importance at the last answered her and said: Alas my good friend, for Gods cause let me be in rest, and let it suffice you that you know, that I never was so desirous for to live, as I am at this present to die. What Madam? (said the Quéen) will you tell me nothing else? No, (said she.) In good faith then (said the Quéen) you shall do me wrong, and I shall have good cause to think the love and favor that in times past you have shewen unto me, to be altogether fained: whereat I am much grieved, seeing I have born such a mind to you, that I would never have failed to hazard not only my honor but my life and soul both for your sake: when the Princess heard her spake with such affection, she was somewhat better assured, and thereupon said unto her: Seeing you are so desirous to know the cause, you shall hear it presently, upon condition you shall promise me to be a means rather to hinder my days than any ways to further them seeing I am fully determined to die. You may yet well remember (said she) the first time ỹ Carmelle came hither to bring us news of Esplandian, son to the good Knight with the gréen Sword, that had commandment from his father (as she said) to come hither to serve us in his place, according to the promise he had made unto us being in this court: ỹ Carmelle said, that for that cause onely Esplandian had sent her unto Constantinople, to give the Emperor and us to understand thereof: but there were other matters in the wind, for she came expressly to intreat me to be good unto her master, who for the great love and affection he bare unto me, lived in the greatest pain that possible could be. Whereupon it happened, that being banquished and overcome with an infinite number of reasons that she

made unto me, I confirmed in my heart, that which his renown had already imprinted in my mind; and therewith determined for to wish more good to him than to my self: not that I ever thought to commit any fault that might redound to my dishonor, but onely for the glory to have so worthy a knight ready at my commandment: whereby this fire did so augment in me, that ever since I would not think on any other thing than upon Esplandian, with whose love my mind hath been so moved, that his long absence hath almost procured my death: yet the hope I had from day to day to see him, hath made me able to sustain my grief with so great patience, that neither pour nor any other, as I think, could ever perceive it in me. But as the Sailor on the Sea being in a tempest, thinking at length to arrive at some haven for to save himself, suddenly meeteth with a Rock that breaketh his ship in pieces: so I (most unfortunate Lady) hoping by the presence of him I so much desire to see, to be at the end of my great sorrow, am now fallen into the gulf of desperation, considering the speech which Carmelle used to me, who speaking softly, said in this manner: Madam, I leave you within this tomb two inestimable treasures: the one is the thing that in all the world you most desire to see: which maketh me verily think it can be no other thing than the dead body of Esplandian, and that (as it is very likely) he hath desired at his death to be brought unto me to weep and lament over him, as I mean to do during the term of my life: which if it pleaseth God shall not be very long. And saying so she cast forth a great sigh, swooning in Queen Minorelles arms: who being abashed to hear the Princess use those words so far from the estimation she always had conceived of her, knew not at the first what counsel of comfort to minister unto her: nevertheless considering the extremity she was in, minding to provide for two accidents that doth at one instant presented themselves, she ran in all haste to fetch cold water, which throwing in her face, she revived again. Wherewith the Queen said unto her, What Madam? will you throw the helve after the hatchet? Will you be holden for a fool, and lose the reputation that is spread of you throughout ȳ world? Where is the constancy, the modesty, and the wisdom where-

with

with you were wont to be adorned? Must you for one word (which you misunderstand) forget your self so much? Suppose it were true that Esplandian should be dead, can you call him again by this tormenting your self? For Gods sake be patient, and if the worst be, you may probe if it be so and not fall into this kind of fantasie upon your own imaginations: Carmelle hath told you that the thing you most desire in all the world is inclosed in this tomb: is it therefore to be said Esplandian should not be alive? Think you he is the first man that hath done the like for his belobeds sake? This I assure you, that although I break the tomb and all that belongeth to it, I will presently see what may be in it. Alas cousin (said the Princess) I fear you will see it over soon for me, for if he be dead (as I think he is) assure your self I will bear him company before it be dar. I pray you (said the queen) be not unhappy before your time, but let me work the feat: hold then (said Leonorine) here is the key that Carmelle left me: which the Queen took in her hand, and entring into the chamber where the tomb stood, she lifted up the Christal plate; that done, she spake aloud, and asked if any body were within the same: Esplandian (to whom one hour seemed a whole year) staying for that time, and hearing the Queen speak, answered presently, and said: I Madam. Who are you? (said Minoresse.) Madam, said he, I am the happy or unahppy knight Esplandian, that put my self into this tomb, ready to receive either death or life, as it shall please the Princess Leonorine to dispose. Are you (said the Queen) Esplandian, son to the good knight with the Green Sword, that by messages hath so oftentimes promised to come and serve us? I Madam (said he) and that to accomplish my word, have caused my self to be brought hither in this manner. If you will promise me (said the Queen) and swear not to pass my commandment in that I shall appoint you to do, I will cause you both to see and speak to her you desire so much to serve? That will I promise you, (said he) and a greater matter likewise, so my Lady be content. It is enough (said the Queen) wherewith she lifted up the second plate, and then opened the Chest wherein he lay, and coming out, he used great reverence to the Queen, but as then he knew her not, till she said unto him:

Sir

Sir Knight, it may be you have heard of me before this time, I am Minoreſſe, that to deliver my Lady and you from the great pain you both endure, hath taken you out of this your priſon: Wherefore I pray you ſtay here a while, till I return again. With that ſhe went unto the Princeſs Leonorine (that mean time for fear ſhook like an Aſpen leaf) and with a merry countenance ſaid unto her: Madam, when we have a long and hard Winter, it is commonly ſeen there followeth a pleaſant Summer: and after great ſorrow cometh exceeding joy. You have bewailed your Knight Eſplandian for dead, but never in all my life have I ſeen a dead creature buried that was ſo fair, and of ſo pleaſant countenance, as the dead man I have found within the Tomb: I pray you come and ſee if I be deceived or not. When the Princeſs heard the Queen uſe thoſe words touching Eſplandian, and to laugh withal with joy, her heart leaped in her body, and riſing out of her bed, without ſpeaking any word, ſhe ran preſently into the Chamber, at the entery whereof ſhe eſpied him ſhe had ſo much lamented: who preſently kneeled down to kiſs her hands. But Leonorine was not as then diſpoſed to uſe Ceremonies, but forgetting her accuſtomed modeſty, and the grabity required in her Sex, eſpecially the ſhamefac'dneſs that commonly is ſeen to be in wiſe and vertuous Ladies, could not ſo much command her own affections, but caſt her ſelf into Eſplandian's arms, kiſſing him with ſo great affection, as if ſhe had ſeen, loved and known him all her life time. And aſſure your ſelf, if Queen Minoreſſe had not drawn her back, and reproved her lightneſs, that at that inſtant thoſe two Lovers had died in the place, for that both their ſpirits had abandoned all their viral parts to meet together at their mouthes, and to embrace each other, even to the extreamity of their lips, ready to paſs further. I ſay not but that Queen Minoreſſe did them wrong: and likewiſe, if any man would accuſe Leonorine of folly or inconſtancy, I anſwer him again, that ſhe is moſt eaſily to be excuſed both of the one and the other, for although ſhe never had ſeen Eſpladian before that time, and that in reaſon ſhe ſhould have known him better before ſhe ſhewed her ſelf ſo private unto him, you muſt ſuppoſe

(as

(as it is true) that lobe had of long time before so well ingraben him in her minde, that she ceased not to see him ebery day with her inward eyes. And as Nature had studied to make her most perfect in all perfections whatsoeber, lobe had likewise taken pleasure to make her the best belobed and the truest lober that eber was before her time. Wherefore it is not to be marbelled, if at the first she shewed so good a countenance to her friend, considering the pain and grief she had endured since the time Carmelle brought her news. These two lobers being thus before each other (Esplandian still kneeling seemed to be rabish'd, ỹ quæn Minoresse could not refrain to say to Leonorine: Madam, me thinks you should do well to command the Knight to rise up, and lead him into your chamber, where you may talk together while the night endureth, if you think good: but to let him kneel still on the ground, in good faith it is not well. My good friend (said Leonorine) he hath fled from us for almost two years together, now I mean to kéep him so néer me, that she shall not easily escape away: with that she took him by the hand to lift him up, but he would not stir, but said unto her: Madam, Castilles not long since sent me word being at Alfarin, ỹ you were much offended with me, I pray you shew me the cause: for if eber I committed fault against you, it hath bin onely in lobing you with all my heart, as I am bound to do Nebertheless, if in your adbise I seem to habe presumed ober-much, pardon me I pray you, and gibe me what punishment you shall think good. My friend (said she) your absence hath procured me so great cause of grief, that I both pray you, and command you, from hencefoth not to absent your self from me long again. Madam (said Esplandian) habing (with your leabe) made another borage to my companions, that may think ill of me, leabing them in their chiefest need, to come bither for my pleasure: I swear unto you of my faith I will neber offend you more in that manner, or any other way whatsoeber. I am content to grant you that (said she) so you return as soon as possible you may: And for the rest I will that from hencefoth you lobe me in such sort, that not any other but my self shall habe power ober you, and that you be my Knight: Now I pray you stand up, and I will shew you further of

my

my mind. With that Esplandian rose up, and Leonorine taking him by the right hand, led him into her chamber, where she set him a chair, and she sat by him, there they began to shew the pains each of them had indured, in what manner their love did first begin, who was the mean thereof, and the end whereunto they pretended, which was their future marriage. In which discourse, they grew into such alterations, that if queen Minoresse had not been there as witness to their talk, considering the heat they then were in, I think not, but in time they would have easily proceeded to a further matter. In that manner the two lovers passed the night till day began to appear: which Queen Minoresse perceiving, went to Leonorine, and said unto her: Madam, the secretest follies are always best, it is almost day, and it may be the Empress may send some one of her women, or come her self in person to visit you, for that yesternight very late it was told her you were not well. I pray you give this knight leave to depart, and let us shut him in the Chest, as we found him at the first. Alas how hard were those words unto Esplandian, and no less unto the Princess, who foreseeing the danger that might fall out if they were found together, said unto him: My good friend, this happy night that hath favored us so much, shall cause you if you think good, to remember the promise you have made unto me: I pray you let me see you again as soon as possibly you may. And as she ended those words, the Queen that stood as a stout watch, heard some body come up the stairs, wherewith being in great fear, she told the Princess Lenorine, which made Esplandian presently go into the other chamber, and without having time to take any longer farewel, laid himself down into the Cedar Chest, yet Leonorine could not abstain, but must of force kiss him before he was shut in, and as they laid the Christal Plate upon the tomb, Carmelle knocked at the door, and with her Gandalin and Enil, and the rest of the company that the night before had brought him thither. With that Queen Minoresse opened the door, and they entering in the chamber, Carmelle saw Leonorine that came unto her, to whom after she had done her reverence, she said: Madam, I am commanded by him that sent me unto you, not to stay any longer here, is it not your

pour pleasure to give me leave to depart, and cause the chest to be delivered unto me, according to your promise? Gentlewoman (said the Princess) I have made you promise thereof, and I will keep it, although I had rather it should stay together as it is, then to separate it asunder. Take it when you will, you shall find it in ỹ same place where yesternight you caused it to be set: with that the Ladies and gentlewomen being advertised of her rising came into her chamber, which hindered Leonorine to speak so secretly with Carmelle as she would have done, but onely gave her the key of the chest, which she caused to be taken out of the tomb: that done, Gandalin and Enil, and the two Squires, took it up between them and carried it away, Leonorine saying to Carmelle: I pray you thank the knight (in my behalf) that hath had me in so good remembrance. And find the means if it be possible that (according to the promise and messages he hath often sent unto the Emperor, part whereof have bin done by your self) he will as soon as he can, come hither to see us. Madam (said she) I will do it with all my heart, as she that desireth to please, serve and obey you. Fail not then (said the Princess) and so God have you in his keeping. That done, Carmelle followed them that carried Esplandian, leaving Leonorine accompanied both with joy & sadness: with joy, to have seen him that she held dearer then her self, and with sadness, for his so sudden departure. But the hope she had of his speedy return, eased her grief much. Carmelle having brought her purpose to pass as you heard before, desiring not to omit any thing that seemed necessary to be done: and to avoid all suspition, sent Gandalin and Enil before unto the ships, and went unto the Emperor, whom she found walking in the gallery who no sooner perceived her, but he asked if the Present that Esplandian sent unto his daughter, were yet in her ship. My Lord, (said she) I caused it yesternight to be carried into her chamber as I promised you, and have left it all with her, onely that which was given me for my part. What is that? (said the Emperor.) The Cedar Chest (said she:) wherein (if it pleaseth God) I will cause the body of Matroco to be buried, that as yet lieth in my fathers Hermitage. But my lord, because as this morning I determined to sayl unto the Castle the defended

mountain, to him that sent me hither, I pray you give me leave to depart. Gentlewoman (said the Emperor) when you were last here, I sent him word by you, what joy and great pleasure it would be unto me for to see him here, I pray you once again shew him what I said: Assuring him, that being here, he shall have of me all honor and good entertainment we can devise. My Lord (said Carmelle) God preserve your Grace and send you life: And therewith taking her leave, she returned into her ship, where Esplandian and his company staied for her.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How *Esplandian* put to Sea, thinking to arrive at the Castle *the defended Mountain*, and of the great adventures he found.

ESplandian entred into his ship, and Carmelle being returned as it is said before, they determined not to stay longer, fearing to be discovered: wherefore they caused ankers to be hoised, and setting sayl, made towards the Castle the defended mountain, but fortune by a great storm and contrary wind carried them another way, driving them along the coast of Alfarin, where the wind ceased, they sailing almost hard by the shore, and at the same instant when they espyed among the Rockes certain horse and footmen fighting together: whereat Esplandian marbelled, and said unto Gandalin and Enil: I pray you, seeing we are arrived here at this instant, let us go see from whence the occasion of their combate proceedeth, and if we may, help them that have the justest quarrel. Let us go (said the two Knights) wherewith they presently landed, and mounting on their horses, commanded the sailers to stay for them, and in great haste ran unto the place where the combate was, and approaching the same, they knew their companions by the white crosses they bare upon their armor, and seeing them in danger, and inclosed on all sides by great number of Turks, Esplandian spurred his horse ober the stones, and entered into the preasse, but not very far, by reason the Turks kept a strait place, where he must pass, from whence at the first he was repulsed: Neverthelesse in the end Gandalin and Enil seconded him so well with their

help

help of those that fought on the other side, that notwithstanding the great resistance the Turks made, they inclosed them on all sides, and beat them down: yet some of them by the swiftness of their horses saved themselves, whereby the Christians remained victors, not losing one man. The knights that had been aided in the manner, could not imagine which way y other three knights came: but when they knew them, never were men gladder, praising God of his great mercy shewed unto them. Wherewith Esplandian asked them how they came thither: My lord (said Elian le delibere,) I and my companions had so much intreated Belleris to lead us into the country, that all this night he hath ben our guide: we being issued out of Alfarin, thinking to surprise y town of Galatia that lieth upon the sea-side not far from hence, and to the same end we stayed in ambush, but perceiving our enterprise to be discovered, & thinking by little and little to retire, we were inclosed in such manner, that if God had not helpen us by your means, without doubt we had al been overthrown and destroyed. By the faith of a knight (said Esplandian) if you had considered the country where we are, and that the loss of one of our men is greater to us then a thousand others, if we were in Christendom, you would not have hazarded your selves so much: but what is past, cannot be undone. And to the end we spēd no worse, let us enter into my ship that staveth for me. My Lord Esplandian (said Belleris) Occasion is offered now unto us, and let him go that refuseth it, when time serveth. You see the overthrow of the Turkes, which is such, that I certainly believe, there is not one man left within the Town. Wherefore I am of opinion, that we ride thither in as secret manner as we may, then if we see occasion, we will set upon the gates, and it may be shall enter the Town without resistance, mean time send one of your Squires to certifie your saylers, that they sail unto Alfarin, or else that they stir not from thence before they hear news of us. This counsel liked them well, and they all agreed unto it: with that Belleris marched on before, Esplandian and the rest following after, riding close together upon a Cauſie, where not far from thence they espyed one sitting upon a sharp Rock most hideous to

behold, whereat they spurred their horses thither to see what it might be, where they saw a woman so old, impotent, and withered, that her breasts hung down beneath her navil, apparelled in a Bears skin, whereon hung her long, white, and knotted hair, where she had lived among those Rockes in all tempests and stormy weathers for the space of fiftcore years together. By which means, her naked body shewed like the bark of an Elm tree or some ancient Oke, whereby not one of them but began to laugh, asking Belleris if he had heard of her before. I truly (said he) for she is so near of linage to King Armato, that she was his great Grandfathers Sister. And although that in her long years she hath been indued with all the gifts of nature, yet would she never marry, what means soever her friends could use, but gave her self continually to study the Art of Magick, in such short, that none could surpass her in the same, whereby she hath foreshown long time since, that before she died, the land of Turky should be overthrown, and brought in subjection unto strangers. And for this cause she hath caused this Rock to be hewen, wherein she hath made two chambers, where continually she abideth, apparrelled in the same manner you now behold her, and as it is commonly reported, she is very near ninescore years of age, and that you may know her better, it is she that caused the gilt pillars with the Tables hanging at them, to be set up at the adventurous fountain, which you my Lord Esplandian (said he) might peradventure see, when you found the Princess Heliaxe, and overthrew her guard in that place. Truly (said Esplandian) I would gladly know how she passeth the time, being so solitary as she is. My Lord, (said Belleris) that could never be known, yet it is thought, that she hath carryed great number of books into the Cave, wherewith she delighteth her self. I marvel (said Esplandian) why no man ever adventured to go into the Rock? So they have done: (said Belleris) but they returned again so well beaten and cruelly handled, that at their coming forth, some of them dyed. Let us speak unto her (said Esplandian) and it may be she will tell us no goodness: wherewith they went nearer unto her, but she presently rose up and

fled

fled into her Cabe, at the entery whereof she stayed, saying to Esplandian: Knight, Above a hundred years before thou wast born, I did foreshew the destruction of this country by thy arrival here, therefore I chuse rather to lead this miserable and cruel life, then to fall into thy hands, and live in miserable captivity. With that she went in, and could no more be seen, whereat they all began to laugh, and without longer staying went on their way, wherein they perceived coming towards them about fifty or fourscore Knights, all armed ready to fight: whereupon doubting them to be enemies, they stood still, causing Enil and Belleris to ride forwards to know the truth, who crossing the field, and staying under a tuff of Cork, they perceived one of the company to bear a red ancient with a white cross, and therewith they knew Frandalo that marched before them, whereupon they returned to their companions: who glad of those news, went to méet them, and coming in sight each of other, Frandalo thinking to be surprised, willed his companions to stand close, and the better to provoke his enemies to fight, he sent two or three of the best horses in his company to skirmish with them, but they perceiving their white crosses knew them presently to be Belleris and his company that they went to seek, which Frandalo knowing, spurred his horse forward, much abashed to see Esplandian, whom he verily thought to be in the Castle the defended mountain: wherewith they embraced each other, talking of their adventures past.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How *Frandalo* and his company of Christian Knights, surprised the town of *Galatia*, and of their message sent unto the Emperor of *Constantinople* by *Gandalin*, to crave more aid.

The Christian Knights being met together, Esplandian asked Frandalo wherefore he rode abroad with so great a company: My lord, said he, this morning I was advertised by Belleris my nephew had issued by night out of Alfarin with certain knights, to see if they could méet with our enemies, & fearing they should find some ambush laid for them & would be stronger than themselves, I told my lord Norandel your uncle, by whose advise we took

rom this way to follow him, but for that neither we nor you have met with any company to provoke us to fight, I pray you let us return again the best way we can unto Alfarin: but my Lord (said he) what adventure hath brought you hither in so good time to find us here? What adventure (said he?) Truly you may well learn it so: for Gandalin, Enil, and I, thinking to sail unto the Castle the defended mountain, fortune by tempest of weather, drave our Ship so near this coast, that we might plainly behold Belleris and his company fighting against a great number of the enemy, that had driven them among the rocks: whereupon we landed, and entered so far among the enemies, that in the end the victory was ours: after that by your nephews counsel we were riding towards Galatie, the which (as he assureth us) will be easily gotten without great resistance, considering the overthrow we have already given them. Truly (said Frandalo) it may well be so, and seeing fortune most commonly aideth all hardy adventurers, let us go forward, and follow me, for I know a way whereby I will bring you thither without being discovered. Let us go (said Esplandian) and with that they followed Frandalo that went softly before them, till they came unto a little hill within a mile of Galatie, from whence they might easily perceive who issued or entred the town: where they beheld great numbers of men, as well horse-men as foot-men, who being advertised of the overthrow of their men, went to succour them, thinking to finde the Christians in the place where they had fought, but they were behind them: which the two knights (they had sent out to discover) perceiving, ran to advertise Frandalo and his company, who being glad of the news, went forward in all haste, and suddenly set upon the gates, where slaying the watch, they entred and took the Town, wherein there were none but impotent and weak people to defend the same: which done, they drew the Bridges, and went upon the walls to keep watch, and to behold the enemies countenance at their return, when they understood thereof, which was not long after; for a countrey-man leaping over the walls, ran presently to advertise them. If they were sorry for it is not to be doubted, for that besides the loss of their goods, they lost their wives and children,

thinking

thinking they should all be sent prisoners into a strange country, whereat they were much grieved: but one Knight among the rest being a man of some stomack, perceiving their sorrow bad them be of good courage, animating them in such sort, that they all determined either to loose their lives or else to win the town again: and thereupon (more moved with rage than with reason) they returned to the town, and assailed it in such furious and indiscreet manner, that a great part of them lost their lives in the assault, being repulsed and driven away by Frandalo, Esplandian, Enil, Gandalin, Elian, Tiron, and ten other of the most principal Christian knights: who to encrease more fear in the Galatians, issued out of the town and slew a great number of them: but as a Cat that is inclosed and assailed (before she beginneth to defend her self) seeketh by all means to shun and avoid the fury of the man, and finding her self out of her hole, and no means of succor left her, becometh so furious and bold, that she beginneth to assail him, from whom she first fled away, and sometimes doth him mischief: So these poor people, seeing nothing but present death before their eyes, by reason of the chase that the ten Christian Knights made after them, being wholly desperate and out of all hope of obtaining mercy, began to take courage again, and in such sort, that desiring to revenge their lives, they turned their faces towards the enemy with such courage, that having set upon the Christians, in the end Frandalo was stricken down, Esplandian and the rest being enclosed in such manner, that they had all lost their lives in that place, had they not been aided of their companions, and night that came upon them. which was the cause they left each other: whereupon the Christians returned into the town, and the Turkes rode towards Tesifante to the Prince Alphorax, who being advertised of their misfortune, to comfort them, spake unto them and said: My friends, I am not a little sorry for your losses, whereunto (if our gods permit us) I will take such order, and be revenged in such sort, that it shall be spoken of so long as the world endureth. For I hope not onely to drive these thieves out of my country, but to go in person to spoyl and utterly destroy the City of Constantinople, with his wicked and

accur-

accurſed Emperor, and all the Chriſtian Monarchy. Which to bring to paſs, it is not long ſince I ſent my Ambaſſadors unto my Friends and Allies, who have all given me their promiſe to aid and ſuccor me with all their Forces and Powers, whereof ſome are already arrived at Tenedo, where we (upon certain matters touching our Countries) are to aſſemble together: and ſtaying the time till I have means to do better for you, I will give order that certain money ſhall be given you to ſuſtain your wants: For the which the Citizens of Galatia thanking him moſt heartily, remaining in Teſtifanc, where they continually lamented their great loſſes: on the other ſide Eſplandian, Brandalo, and the reſt of the Knights that had gotten the Town, conſidering with themſelves that it would be impoſsible for them to keep and defend ſo many places with ſo few men, agreed among them to ſend Gandalin to Conſtantinople unto the Emperor, to ſhew him what they had of late done to Alphorax, and won the town of Galatia, being one of the moſt famous havens in all theſe parts, and for that cauſe beſought him to ſend them Galtilles, or ſome other of his Captains, with ſome Forces to aid them, otherwiſe they ſhould be conſtrained either to leave Galatia, or elſe Alfarin, conſidering their ſmall number, and the continual alarms that the enemies gave them: and the better to move him thereunto, they ſent him the greateſt part of the rich Jewels they had conquered in the town. But they had neither Barque nor Pinnace ready to ſend, wherefore they were conſtrain'd to take that wherein Eſplandian came thither: which at that time (as fortune would) lay ſtill at anker ſtaying their pleaſure. Wherewith Eſplandian ſent Sergil to cauſe the ſhip to come thither: which done, and Gandalin ready to imbark himſelf, Eſplandian took him aſide, and ſaid unto him: Friend Gandalin, you have always been faithful and truſty to my father, which giveth me cauſe to diſcloſe my ſecret unto you before all others: when you come to Conſtantinople (ſaid he) you ſhall ſee the Lady Leonorine, to whom you ſhall preſent my moſt humble Commendations, ſhewing her, that I will not fail very ſhortly to accompliſh my promiſe and her commandment, and withal you ſhall preſent her the two Slaves

that

that were giben me, which I ſend to wait upon her, that by their preſence ſhe may habe me in remembrance: and knowing you are not to learn how to uſe your ſpeeches in ſuch caſes, I pray you Gandalin let me finde in you that which I expect. My Lord (ſaid he) God gibe me grace to do you ſerbice. Then fare you well (ſaid Eſplandian.) With that Gandalin with all his charge entred into the ſhip, and habing ſet ſail, had a good wind, that in ſhort time after he arribed in Conſtantinople: where being landed, he cauſed two ſquires to bear the Preſents he had brought; and entring into the palace, he found the Emperor talking with diders of his Noble men: the Emperor perceibing him, went to imbrace him, aſking him where he had left ſ good knight Eſplandian, and whether he meant not ſhortly to come and ſee him? My Lord, ſaid Gandalin, he commendeth himſelf moſt humble unto your Grace, and hath ſent you word by me, that not above fifteen days paſt, he, Frandalo, and others of our company, habe taken the town of Galatia. Galatia? (ſaid the Emperor) By the faith I bear to God, that is good newes: for as I habe been informed heretofore, it is one of the riches towns in all Turky, but I know not well how they can keep it. Full well my Lord, (ſaid Gandalin) ſo it be your pleaſure to ſend them ſome aid: otherwiſe they ſhall be conſtrained in the end, either to abandon that to keep Alfarin, or Alfarin for that: which would be a ſhame for them, and great damage both to your Grace and all Chriſtendom. Habe they found great riches therein (ſaid the Emperor,) or habe they loſt any quantity of their men? My Lord (ſaid Gandalin) ſome of the enemies were ſlain in the taking thereof: and with that he began to ſhew him the maner how it was done, and cauſing the caſes wherin the preſents were, to be opened, among other things he ſhewd him the images of Nabuchodonoſor king of Aſſyria, of Alexander the great, and that which he moſt eſteemed, the true and libely repreſentation of Hector of Troy, armed at all points, as he was when he fought againſt the Grecians: and ſurely the Emperor had reaſon to make ſo much account thereof, for that Agamemnon was content to receibe it for his part, as being eſteemed to be the richeſt jewel in all the city of Troy, for that Hector himſelf had cauſed it purpoſely to be

made while the Grecians lay before the City, by one of the cunningest workmen that could be found, and set it upon the chief Gate of the Pallace of Ilion, which long after fell into the hands of the kings of Turky, that had erected it in the Market-place of Galatia, placing it upon a high marble pillar, which Gandalin shewed unto the Emperor, as he heard reported in the countrey: wherewith the Emperor was so well pleased, that he could not refrain to say: In good truth I should not be better pleased with the taking of the City of Tesifante, than I am at this time with this goodly Present, & I pray you tell the knights that sent it, I thank them for it with all my heart My lord (said Gandalin) they did think it would be more acceptable unto your Grace than all the vessels of gold and silver that they found within the Town, part whereof they have likewise sent unto you, that are in this other Case, which he presently caused to be opened, and after they had perused them, Gandalin caused the two slaves that Esplandian sent, to come nearer, presenting them to the Princess Leonorine, saying unto her: Madam, the good knight Esplandian not knowing what greater Present to offer you (next unto himself) then these two yong maids, he sendeth them unto you as your slaves, to the end every man may know that as you are the goodliest lady that ever nature framed, so is there not any creature living on the earth, that better deserveth to command such as command others, than your self: wherefore if you shew him the courtesie to accept them at his hands, he will estæm it for one of the greatest favors that ever he received. Leonorine that knew as well how to dissemble her affections as any woman living on the earth, and desiring to have the same opinion that always had run of her, to continue still, with a dissembled kinde of anger, answered Gandalin, and said: Sir knight, it seemeth by your words, that Esplandian is disposed to mock me, and that you estæm me to be a woman of light credit: could you of your faith think me so very a childe, that I should not well perceive (that if Esplandian were so much at my commandment as you say) he would not have deferred the time so long to come hither unto us, were it onely but to acquit the promise king Amadis his Father made us above six or seven years past. But I know

his

his mind full well, he means to content us with words, and many messages that from time to time he sendeth, together with an infinite number of excuses, but all to no purpose, whereof while I live I will not accept one of them for his discharge: let him therefore come himself, and then it may be I will believe that to be in him, I have so oftentimes heard reported. When the Emperor heard her speak in that sort, he showed by his countenance that he took great pleasure at his daughters choler, and said unto her: My sweet friend, what will Ganda, lin say to see you so uncourteous towards him, that honoreth you so much: I pray you sweet-heart moderate your choler, and take that he sendeth, for if you refuse it, he shall have great occasion to dislike thereof: And you see that for your sake he doth so many valiant acts, that the good Knight with the Green Sword could neber do the like. My Lord (said she) I believe for valor he is not inferior unto his father, but for courtesie his father surpasseth him. In faith Madam (said Gandalin) if you knew him as well as I do, it may be you would commend him more then now you blaspheme him, seeing that if he hath deferred the time to come hither, it is onely because he thinketh he hath not as yet done sufficient in arms, whereby he should deserve one spark of favor at your hands, considering your estate and the small valor that is in him, although at this day he is esteemed the best Knight that ever bare arms for these hundred years Nevertheless, seeing you accuse him of that, that ought most to excuse him, I promise you of mine honor, leaving all things apart, presently upon my return he shall come hither unto you, to do whatsoever it shall please you to command him. Gandalin (said the Princess Leonorine) think not (whatsoever I say) that I either take pleasure or displeasure at his presence or his absence, but onely as my Father doth, and I for his sake, knowing the great love and affection he hath always born to King Amadis his Father, and continued the same to his Son. But hereof am I well assured, that he cannot so excuse himself, or make us think other, then that herein he hath done us wrong. Nevertheless, seeing it is the Emperors pleasure, I will kéep the Present

he hath sent me, upon the promise and assurance you habe made of his coming hither as soon as you shall be arrived at Galatia. Truly Leonorine played her part, very cunningly here: for hardly would it habe been thought or once imagined, that Esplandian and she had so faithfully given their hands and hearts as they had done in the presence of Queen Minoresse, as you heard before. & Gandalin for his part knew not what to think although he had born Esplandian in the tomb, and set him in her chamber as you likewise heard. Then the Emperor asked him how long he meant to stay. My lord (said Gandalin) as little as I may, for it were not fit for me to libe at rest, while my companions are in arms: Wherefore I most humbly beseech your Grace to gibe me my dispatch as soon as possible you can. Gandalin, (said the Emperor) I will presently send for my admiral, & will cause men in al haste to be prepared, that within six or seben days they shall be ready to depart. With that he went into the Garden to recreate himself, and the Ladies with him: where when Gandalin perceibed Leonorine in an Arbor of Mirtle trées, walking penshively alone, he went unto her and said: Madam, my Lord Esplandian commanded me to certifie your Grace, that since the time he departed from you, and that he received so great favor at your hands, his heart (that wholly is yours) hath so longed after you, that he hath thought to die a thousand times with grief, for the loss of your presence. And to say the truth, I habe known many men troubled with the passions of lobe, but I certainly beliebe there was never his like, nor that more wisely could dissemble it, which maketh me greatly to doubt his person. For that it is impossible, considering the grief he still indureth, together with the small comfort he received of his familiar friends, (not knowing his disease) but that he must in short time end his days: whereby great dammage should then arise unto all Christendom, considering the strange beginning of Knighthood and great prowess that is in him: which is such, as that if he continue as he hath begun, he will bring that Order in greater estimation then ever it hath bèen before: wherefore Madam, séeing I habe always (as it may be you are already advertised) bèn a Servant to

his

his father, and that I am acquainted with the nature of his son, and the danger wherein he is like to fall into, if you shew him not some favor, I have presumed to shew your Ladyship the hard case wherein he was when I left him, as also that he hath expressly commanded me to assure you, that his onely intent and desire is to be in your presence. Yet perceiving the danger wherein his companions do remain, he knoweth not what excuse to make, whereby he might take occasion for to leave them: wherefore he beseecheth you to impute his long absence unto fortune, and not to him that is born only to love, serve and obey you. In uttering whereof Gandalin shewed so sorrowful a countenance, that he made Leonorine ready to weep. In which kind of office he had so well bin exercised from his youth, that no man could surpass him in the same. Friend Gandalin (said the Princess Leonorine) I know not what you mean I should do for him more then already I have done, nor yet for what cause you should imagine that I seek to be the means of his death: seeing that if he were but sick, I know my self so feeble and impatient, that with grief & sorrow I should not be able to live one hour after. Let it therefore be far from you, once to think ỳ I would ever be any other mans then only his: and think it not strange, if in the Emperors presence, or before the world, I dissemble as I do, for I would not in any case, that the least inckling of the burning love wherein my heart continually flameth towards him, should as yet be once perceived, chiefly for the great good I wish unto him. Madam (said Gandalin) I am well assured he will receive an extream pleasure to hear these news, and ỳ he wil leave all things to come hither, if you think it good. That is my desire (said she) and I pray him so to do, & you to perswade him thereunto. While they were devising, Tartary the Admiral (so called of ỳ place of his birth) entred into ỳ garden: being a man issued of a mean house, but advanced unto great authority by his great with & valiant courage, so that he commanded over all ỳ Grecian seas. The Emperor and he talked long time touching Gandalins message, concerning aid to be sent unto Galatia, and in the end he willed in all haste to prepare thirty gallies & Foists, with two thousand of the best souldiers he could find to man ỳ same. The

Admiral

Admiral Tartary according to his charge, executed his Commission in such sort, that within six days after he was ready with his navy to set sayl, and depart from thence.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Urganda* arrived at *Galatia*, and of the danger wherein she was by the subtilty of *Melie* the Enchantress.

THe Admiral Tartary and Gandalin having taken their leaves of the Emperor, set sayl, and passed the straights of Constantinople, and without any adventures, arrived at Galatia within one week after their departure: if they were well received by the Christian Knights, it is not to be doubted, for their number was so small and so dispersed, that they were in doubt to be able to keep that Town, with Alfarin, and the Castle the defended mountain. But when they saw such aid, they were in better hope, and having received the Admiral, they divided their two thousand men, as need required. Mean time Esplandian had no small desire to know of Gandalin if he had spoken with the Princess Leonorine, and how she did: for the which cause being in his chamber, he sent for him. Where talking together, Gandalin shewed him from point to point what speeches had passed between the Princess and him, not onely before the Emperor, but also in the garden And of my faith sir(said he)you do her wrong, considering the good meanes you have both to satisfie her and your self: for what excuse soever you can make, you are not so sore charged on this side, that you may not spare some time to go and see her, which she craveth at your hands. That I will do(said Esplandian) but I must find the means;take you care for that (said Gandalin)and let me go sleep, for I neber had more need: Go (said Esplandian) & be here again betimes in the morning. Wherewith Gandalin took his leave, leaving Esplandian alone in great care how he might find some convenient excuse to leave his companions in ỹ extreamity, but God provided for him: for the same night about an hour before day as he began to slumber, he heard a most pleasant sound of musick, which you must understand, came out of the great Ser-

pent

pent that he left in the Caſtle the defended mountain, which at that time was arrived before the town of Galatia, but little did he think of any ſuch thing, or that Urganda had bin therein, becauſe he thought her to be in great Britain. This mellody continued for the ſpace of half an hour and more, which done, he heard ſuch a noiſe of Trumpets Clarigals, Phifes, and Tabers, that ſounded ſo high, that the ſentinels of the town thought verily the enemies nahy had bin arrived before the ſame to lay ſiege unto it: whereupon they cauſed an Alarum in the town, each man running to the walls, being all of that mind till day, when they might behold the great Serpent (wherein Urganda was) all hung with long pennons and ſtreamers: whereat Eſplandian was ſo glad, that going down unto the Haven, he preſently entered into a boat with Talanque, Manley, and diverſe other of the principal captains to ſee who might be there. And rowing nèer unto it, they knew Urganda that ſtayed for them on the hatches, and ſtretching forth her arms, ſpake unto them and ſaid: My good friends, you are moſt heartily welcome, I pray you come up into my ſhip, that I may imbrace you. With that Eſplandian entred, and as he meant to ſalute Urganda, ſhe knéeled on the ground to kiſs his fèet, whereat he being aſhamed took her up, and ſaid unto her: Madam, I neber thought you would habe taken pleaſure to mock with me, ſeeing I account my ſelf much more bound to you then to any creature liking in the world. And therefore for Gods cauſe, if at any time I chance to offend you, puniſh me I pray you in ſome ſort or other. Moſt happy Knight, (ſaid ſhe) The aid I hope for at your hands before many days ſhall paſs, moved me to do as I habe done, wherfore I beſèech you take it in good part. And with that ſhe embraced him, and after him, Talanque, Manley, and all the reſt, every man doing her great honor, deſiring her to ſhew them the cauſe of her ſo ſudden coming thither. My good friends (ſaid ſhe) you ſhall know it at ſome other time when better leiſure ſerveth: mean while I am to tell you that it is neceſſary for you thortly to go unto the City of Conſtantinople, where you ſhall enter all armed and apparrelled in the ſame armor I habe brought hither for you, and thus muſt I tell you, that if you ſhould defer it till

ano-

another time, it would be prejudicial to you all Wherefore I counsel you to do it upon the first day of the next week, assuring you to be as well received of the Emperor, as ever were any knights, which your ease and pleasure in his company, shall continue until ỹ rolling wheel of fortune turning about, shall bring with it many travels, passions, & adventures, which shall cause many griefs and sorrows both to you and others. And the better to make you believe that al I say is true, I tell you that I my self shall fall into two of the greatest dangers of my self that ever I had, whether it be here or in another place I know not. And which is worse, I cannot by any means avoid ỹ same, not knowing any cause how nor wherefore it should be so, although it be in a manner ready to fall upon me. Madam (said Esplandian) before you shall receive any hurt in our presence, we will all lose our lives to succor you. My good child (said she) mans destiny of force must be accomplished. But I pray you let us enter into some other talk, for this maketh me melancholy. Madam (said Manley) Is it not your pleasure to go into the Town? I (said she) & I pray you send for Norandel, who at this present I know is at Alfarin, and I will give you as great cause to rejoyce as ever you had: for that within my ship I have brought the King of Denmark, wounded in a combate that he fought against Garlante Lord of the Isle of Calafre, that by force would have taken two Gentlewomen from him. And although Garlante be estæmed a hardy and baliant knight, yet did the king bring him in such case, that unless he had craved mercy, the king would have stricken off his head: which he spared upon condition, that during his life he should never after injure any knight, which Garlante sware and bowed in my presence, for that by chance arriving there, during their combate, I heard what passed betwæn them. And because I perceived the King to be in danger of his person by reason of the great number of wounds he had upon his body, I would not leave him, but caused him to enter into my ship, and layed him in the best bed, where now he is almost healed. Ha (said Esplandian,) what good news are these, of my faith I thought verily he had bin dead: wherefore madam, I pray you for Gods cause let me crave the means to sæ him: with that

Urgan-

Urganda led him where he lay, but when they saw each other, Esplandian could not refrain weeping, with the great pleasure he took to see the King. Nevertheless, for the time they had no great speech together, neither would Urganda permit them to do it, doubting lest the King (being yet but weak and feeble) might thereby be hindered of his health. Wherefore she caused Esplandian to go forth, and entring with her into the boat they rowed to the shoar, from whence they led Urganda in the best lodging in the town, with as much honor as they could have done to the Queens Brisenne or Oriane, if any of them had bin there in presence. The next day Esplandian pitying the great number of women and little children that had bin kept within the town from the time that it was taken, said to his companions, that it would be better to give them leave to depart from thence, then to hold them still, for that the longer they continued in the town, the more charge they put them to: and to keep them prisoners (said he) for longer servitude, God may possible be offended with us. Wherefore if you will believe me, using rather mercy then rigour towards them, I am of opinion that we send them all to Tesifant to ỹ Princess Heliaxe, who will thank us for it, and so shall we be rid of so much charge. To this all the knights agreed, & Carmelle was appointed to execute ỹ message, and be ỹ had seen the great number of people ỹ were about her, especially women, weeping most bitterly to behold themselves banished & driven from their own houses, surely he could not chuse unless he were hard-hearted, but have pitried their estate. But let them go, & let us hear what danger fell unto Urganda ỹ next day after, who being welcome to ỹ knights, took great pleasure to hear them shew of ỹ adventures they had found in ỹ Turkish country, since ỹ taking of Alfarin. And each man after the other discoursing what they knew, Esplandian remembred ỹ old woman they saw among the rocks, where she continued, wherat he could not chuse but smile, which Urganda espying, sked him the cause. Madam (said he) I thought upon the beauty of a yong maid, that I & some of our company chanced to see not far hence, being the best furnished of all things for to beautifie her that might be found, and the better to describe her unto you, I can assure you

(upon Belleris word) that it is at the least eight or nineſcore yeares ſince ſhe firſt could go and ſpeak, yet hath ſhe ſo freſh and gallant a colour, that to behold her well, I cannot compare her better then unto the bark of thoſe great Elms we commonly find along the high ways as we ride in great Brittain, her hair is as white as Snow, and for want of combing all knotted together, which ſetteth her out ſo well, that to behold it ſpread abroad upon a bears skin (which ſhe weareth for a gown,) there is not any man living that would not be ſurpriſed with a ſudden and vehement love, in the beholding of her. Urganda that had heard of her before, and above all things was much deſirous to ſee her, becauſe of her great skill, ſaid unto Eſplandian: In good faith I know her better then you think I do, and am well aſſured, that in her young yeares ſhe hath bin one of the goodlieſt Ladies that ever you ſaw. For ſhe is both daughter, ſiſter, and aunt unto a King, and is called Melie, who for to learn the perfect art and ſcience of Nigromancy, hath ſo much condemned the world, that for her inheritance ſhe hath choſen a Rock, wherein ſhe hath cauſed a cave to be digged, where ſhe now remaineth and liveth in great miſery, and I ſwear unto you of my faith, that it is above twenty years and more ſince I determined to come and ſee her, but other affairs that touched me nearer, have ſtill hindered my deſire. Madam (ſaid Eſplandian) ſeeing you are ſo neer, you may do it now, and all we will be your guides. I pray you let it be ſo (ſaid ſhe) and let us go as ſoon as we have dined: which done, and the tables uncovered, every man made preparation to go with Urganda to behold that ſight: but Eſplandian would have but threeſcore with him, who being well horſed and armed at all points, iſſued out of Galatia, Urganda on her palfrey, riding among them. Belleris was their guide, and when they came neer unto the cave where they had found Melie, they eſpyed her ſet croſs legged upon the point of a Rock, with that Urganda prayed them to ſtay, that ſhe alone might ſpeak ſecretly unto her, which the Knights agreed unto. Wherewith ſhe rode forwards, and being neer unto her, ſhe ſaid: Madam I pray you be not offended that I come to ſee you, and offer you my ſervice. Who are you? (ſaid ſhe) I am (ſaid ſhe) Urganda le Diſcogneve,

cogneve, that have always had a great desire to see you Ha Urganda, the wisest Lady among all others (said Melie) your coming hither pleaseth me right well, light down I pray you, that you and I may talk of such things as we have taken great pains to learn and understand: for although you have been the onely occasion of the Christians arrival here, whereby our poor country indureth so much woe, yet I cannot but excuse you, knowing the faith & duty you are bound to shew to your religion. Wherefore I pray you come neer, and sit down by me. Urganda perceiving her to be old and feeble, did as she required, hoping by force to stay her there, whether she would or no, till her company were come thither, minding to give her unto them to bring her to Galatia, but she met with as crafty a mate as her self, for the old woman perceiving Urganda to be neer her, went unto the mouth of her Cave, and said unto her: Urganda, It would grief me that these Knights should hear our talk, wherefore let us go in. Whereat Urganda made no difficulty, thinking verily, that if she might once lay hands on her, she would use her at her pleasure: wherewith she followed her, but she was no sooner entered, but Melie stepped to her and held her so straight by the throat, that she had no means to call Esplandian or any of the rest to help her. But they fearing the worst, ran in all haste unto the Cave, and the first that entred was Talanque, and after him Manley, and they had no sooner stepped in, but they fell down as if they had been dead, and their fall was so great, that Esplandian that followed them heard it, but he had a remedy about him against all such adventures, and that was his good Sword against the which no inchantment whatsoever could ought abail, which he first found to be true when he entred into Arcabonnes chamber: he perceiving his two companions in such case, being much griened thereat, willingly would have relieved them, but that he espyed Melie holding Urganda under her knee, seeking by all means to strangle her: which caused him first to succor her, threatning Melie if that she did her hurt, she should dearly buy it, but for all his threatnings she ceased not to use all the means she could for to destroy her, until Esplandian went neer unto her, and with his Sword thought to cleave her

head. Wherewith she began to flie, thinking to be safe within the chamber where she wrought her charms, but as she stepped upon the threshold of the doore, Esplandian caught her by the bears skin, and whether she would or not, held her so fast, that she could go no further. And as he lifted up his arm to kill her, he remembred that he should do wrong, thinking it not convenient for a Knight to defile his hands in the blood of a simple woman not able to resist: and surely the thought of his, moderated his colour in such sort, that he purposed not to do it, minding onely to draw her out of the hault: wherewith he took her by the hair, and pulled her with all his force. With that he espyed a great old Ape, with two eyes burning like flaming fire, that lept upon him for to tear his flesh, but he gave him such a blow with his fist betwéen the eyes, that he stroke him dead. And passing forward, brought Melie out of her Cave, and leaving her in Frandalos keeping, went in again to see if Urganda were alive, where he found her in such pain, that it seemed the soul would depart out of her body, wherear he had so great pity, that he took her in his arms, and set her in the air, the like he did to Talanque and Manley, who within one quarter of an hour after, could not call to mind what had happened unto them, but were as whole and as well as ever they were before. Wherefore they mounted on their horses, taking Melie with them that sat upon Sergils horse, and he behind her, holding her in his arms, lest she should escape. And God knows with what joy Urganda shewed them what fear she had bin in, which as she said was such, that she thought herself to die. But (said she) even as one nail driveth out another, so the joy I have of my delivery, maketh me in a manner to forget the pain wherein I was. And with that they entered into the Town, being almost night.

CHAP. XL.

How *Carmelle* arrived at *Tessante*, and spake with *Heliaxe*, and of the marvellous combate which *Esplandian*, *Frandalo*, *Gandalin*, & *Enel* fought against three Giants & twelve Turkish knights.

Carmelle travelled so long with the women and children of Galatia, that they arrived at Tessant, where they found both

both their fathers and husbands, as many of them as had saved themselves, as it is said before. Estéem I pray you what grief they had to think upon their exile, & loss of all their goods: surely there is no heart so hard, but would have wept with grief to behold great numbers of men and women, with divers little children about them, and not having any means to give them bread or drink. Whereof the Prince Alphorax having news, & hearing of their sorrow, could not refrain to say in presence of them all: Ah immortal gods, it must néeds be, that either for some great sin of me or mine, this cruel war is moved in my country: O gods immortal, let your wrath, appease, and of your infinite goodness let it rather please you that all the mischief which you send upon these impotent people, fall onely upon me that alone have moved your indignations: if not, then I beseech you give me grace, that to your glory I may drive these cursed Christians (enemies of your holy laws) out of my country, swearing unto you, that if you vouchsafe your aides, I will make so great a slaughter of them, that thereby your wraths shall be appeased, if it be so that the small indeavor I have hitherto used to drive them hence be the occasion of your anger towards me. Then he asked them how they got away. My Lord (said he that brought him news) a fair gentlewoman named Carmelle (as I hear say) hath brought them hither, and desireth to speak with you and the Princess Heliaxe. Lady (said Alphorax to his wife, do you know her? I my Lord (said Heliaxe) for she bare me company all that day that I fel into Frandalos hands, being very ready to do me all the pleasure and service that she could devise: wherefore my Lord, I pray you let her have that honor and entertainment she deserveth. Lady (said Alphorax) I am well content therewith. With that some of them ran to fetch Carmelle who being come in presence of Alphorax, went presently unto the Princess Heliaxe, and without salutation, said unto her: madam, you know the lord and master that I serve. who onely hath authority over me. think it not therefore strange, if in any sort I have not humbled my self before the prince Alphorax or to you: And to the end Madam, that you should know the cause of my arrival here, I think the taking of Galatia is not unknown

unto

unto you, whereof at this present the Christians are Lords and Masters, having conquered it from you by force, not finding any Garrison therein, but a number of women and little children: which my Lord Esplandian and his company send unto your Grace, committing them unto your good discretion. Assuring you (their Religion onely excepted) they are ready to do you any service that they may. Carmelle, said the Princess) this is not the first favor they have shewed unto me, I am of long time so much beholding to them, that be it in their adversities or their prosperities, I will never be unmindful of the same. Nevertheless, I am assured, that at this day I have not, neither yet shall ever have the means to do it (as I think) unless that variable fortune turn her rowling wheel, and abase them as much as now they are advanced, then (if it so fall out) they shall full well perceive how much I esteem their vertues and favors they have shown unto me. Carmelle (said Alphorax) have they willed you to deliver no message unto me? No my Lord (said she) but I tell you plain, they are determined very shortly to come and visit you, in such manner, as will not greatly like you. By all my gods (said Alphorax) I will ease them of that burthen, if they make not the more haste; for I have so many men preparing, that I mean to go in person to Constantinople, to destroy the wicked Emperor and all the Christians. Then shall my wife have means (if she think good) to acknowledge the favors towards them, which they have shown unto her, as she saith. My Lord (said Carmelle) Mens enterprises do oftentimes fall out contrary to their expectations, and God that is in Heaven above, commandeth and disposeth of all things as it pleaseth him, and not as we would have it. Now Madam (said she to Heliaxe) I have done the commandment of those that sent me hither, wherefore I beseech you let me be safely conducted to the place from whence I came. My Lord (said the Princess to Alphorax) I pray you shew her so much favor, for it would grieve me much that she should receive the least injury in the world: which he granted unto her, and withal Heliaxe gave her for her pains one of the richest Gowns she had. Wherewith she caused her to be conducted by twenty knights, unto the Town of Galatia: where being arrived, she

shewed

shewed them what she had done, as also what speches the prince Alphorax used unto her, which Urganda marked well saying unto the knights: In faith my good friends, as touching Alphorax high words, they are the fruits of his nature, being altogether proud and arrogant: Nevertheless, I can assure you, that Fortune promiseth him great matters. And because it will not be long before they do happen, I will now use no words of them: praying some of you to shew me so much favor to return again unto Melies Cave, to fetch her Books that we left behinde us. Which being in my possession, it may be they will serve hereafter to do both you and many others pleasure. Esplandian hearing Urganda speak with such affection, and knowing the desire she had to have the Books, answered her and said: Madam, before I sleep I will see if I can fulfil your pleasure. And without longer staying, he desired Enil, Frandalo, and Gandalin, to bear him company: who presently armed themselves, and being on horseback without any other company then their own Squires, issued out of the Town, leaving Urganda with Norandel, that was newly come from the City of Alfarin. The four Knights rode so long till they came unto Melies rock, where not far from thence they found three Giants and twelve Knights, that with a loud voice stood at the mouth of the Cave calling Melie, for the shepheards keeping sheep in the fields (having seen her led unto Galatia) ran to tell them news: and to know the truth they were expresly come thither. Esplandian and his company knew them well to be their enemies, wherfore they determin'd to give them battel although their number was far greater: wherefore being covered with their shields, and their swords ready in their hands, they entred among them, Esplandian met the first Giant, Frandalo the second, and Gandalin and Enil the third: and Esplandian gave his giant so great a blow, that therewith he made him take so great a leap, that both master and horse lay upon the ground, not once removing hand or foot: but it fell out otherwise with the rest, for they having taken their spears upon Frandalo, Gandalin, and Enil, their horses being loosely bridled, bare them at least a mile from thence, before they could make them stay. With that the four Christian Knights were inclosed by twelve

Turks,

Turks, whereof three of them at the first charge were stricken dead unto the ground: wherewith the fight began to be most perillous and fierce, in such sort, that before the two Giants could return again, five other of the Turks were in such case, that the best of them was hurt to death, so there rested but four: which Esplandian and Frandalo left fighting with Gandalin and Enil, to meet the two Giants that in great haste came towards them to help their companions: and as they met together neber was there braber fight, for Esplandian thinking upon the Princess Leonorine, gabe not one blow but he made the blood to follow on him that had the stroke: whereby the rock became all bloody, yet he found his enemy no less able to requite his blows, so that in short space his shield was so hewed and cut in pieces, that there rested nothing but the leathers in his hands: whereat he was in such a rage, that rising in his stirrups, he gabe his enemy so great a blow upon the coise of steel, that he strake it off, wherwith the Giants eyes started in his head, which made him bow his neck upon the horses main, and withal let fall his Sword. With that Esplandian strake him such another blow between the neck and shoulders that he cut off his head: wherewith the horse ran up and down the fields with his dead Giant on his back: mean time Frandalo handled the other Giant in such sort, that he had put him out of breath. Gandalin and Enil for their parts doing no less, for they two fighting against four, behabed themselbes so couragiously, that they slew two of their hardiest enemies: yet the other two would neber yield, although they were still ready to flie, especially when they perceibed Esplandian coming towards them. And to say truth, it was not possible for them to make any resistance: yet he staied a while, because he perceibed some of them that were stricken down to rise again, and take their Swords in hand: whereat he turned about, but it chanced that his horses foot lighting between a cliff stuck fast, and was forced to fall down, whereby Esplandian was in the greatest danger of death that ever he had, by reason that his enemies were on all sides about him ready to thrust their Swords into his belly: a thing very easie to be done if God had not probided for him, and giben strength and agility

to

to his horse to rise again with his master on his back: who perceiving himself at liberty, and having his Sword in hand made such execution on the Turks, that he left not one alive: wherewith those two that fought with Gandalin and Enil fled along the mountain, as if all the devils in hell had been behind them, and not being pursued saved themselves, leaving the Giant behind them for a pawn, to whom Frandalo granted life, not onely because he asked mercy, but for that he was in a manner dead.

CHAP. XLI.

How *Esplandian* entred into *Melies* Cave, to fetch her books, and of an assault made upon him, *Frandalo*, *Enil*, and *Gandalin*, as they thought to return again unto *Galatia*.

THe combate ended as you heard before, each man caused his wounds to be dressed and bound up in the best manner they could: then Esplandian entred into Melies Cave to fetch the books he sought, where he went into a fair chamber being four square, about the which there grew so much Ivy, that it might verily be judged to have been placed there for the hangings of the chamber: in this chamber at each corner there hung four Lamps, ℔ burnt both night & day and never went forth, so cunningly could the Enchantress shew her Art in that place: and as Esplandian looked well about him, he espyed the door of another chamber, in the middle whereof stood a great Candlestick all of Massy Gold with seven branches, and in every branch a wax Candle that burned continually: hard by it stood a Cypres-table, whereon lay Melies books, some covered with plates of Gold and graven upon it, others with Silver, bound and emboised round about, which Esplandian took and carried with him out of the Cave, giving them to keep unto his Squire, and mounting on their horses, they rode the same way they came, thinking presently to be at Galatia again. But they were stayed sooner than they looked for, for the Turks that fled away (as you heard before) made an Alarum at a little Town not far from thence, whereby there issued twenty horse and forty foot-

men, who being assured that four Knights onely and no more had overthrown their men, made all the speed they could to inclose them, especially those that were well horsed: Frandalo and his company perceived them afar off yet could they hardly shun them, but of force must fight, or else endure the shame to flie away. Wherefore Esplandian was in mind to try their fortune, and to send one of their Squires in all haste unto Galatia, to advertise them of the danger they were in, that they might succor them: whereto Frandalo would not give consent, shewing what great pain and trabel both they and their horses had endured all that day, as also the great number of their enemies in regard of them, in such sort (said he) that if we take upon us for to fight with them, I am in doubt, that thinking to win honor, we shall be counted rash and presumptuous fools. What then? (said Esplandian) will you endure the shame to flie away? In good truth (said he) for my part I had rather endure the hazard of life or death, what ever shall happen. Then we will do thus (said Frandalo:) my Squire shall run unto Galatia to advertise Talanque and the rest how we staved behind. Mean time, I know a bridge not far from hence, whether we will go and defend the same, till our aid shall come, where we cannot be assailed by them all at once: otherwise think with your self what meanes we have to resist so many men both on horse and foot, that come purposely to assayl us. Let us go then (said Esplandian) wherewith leaving the way on the right hand they turned to the left, as Frandalo led them: and they had not ridden very far but they came unto a little river somewhat deep, over the which there stood a bridge, where they had no sooner arrived, but they were presently charged by their enemies, especially by one of the Turks that was most brave and sumptuous, and best mounted of them all, as being their captain: who bearing a great launce in his hand, began to cry most vehemently in the Arabian tongue unto Esplandian and his companions, saying: You dogs, you fly away, but by our gods it shall cost you all your lives: wherewith Enil that heard his threatnings better than the rest, turned his face, and set spurs to his horse, the Turk and he meeting so fiercely together, that

Enil

Enil was hurt in the right arm, and the Turk thrust clean through the body, wherewith he fell presently stark dead unto the ground: Which set his companions in such a rage to see their champion thus suddenly slain, that they thought to inclose Enil, but he found means to recover the bridge: surely whosoever had seen the great prowess of those four champions, might with good reason esteem them as they were, specially Esplandian that stroke not one blow in vain. And although they were but few in comparison of their enemies, yet they did twice or thrice overthrow divers of the Turks that seemed boldest to adventure forward, in such sort, that had it not been for the footmen that came upon them, the horsemen had but little prevailed: whereat it is not to be marvelled, because the greatest part of them were Citizens, altogether unexpert in arms, and fitter for banket at a table than to guide a horse or break a launce: whereby in less than a quarter of an hour the four Knights had done them great hurt: and so much, that neither the horsemen nor footmen durst once set forward to enter upon the bridge, till one of them determined to make proof, thereby if it were possible to inclose them round about. This Turks name was Tluacam, a valiant and hardy knight, as he well shewed before the combate ended: for although the water was deep and the other side hard to climb up, yet he waded through, and at divers times bare eight more of his companions over: which Frandalo and the rest perceiving, they were constrained to divide themselves, Esplandian and Enil staying at the end of the Bridge where the combate first began, Frandalo and Gandalin standing at the other, and God knows what trouble they had, for Tluacam desirous to win honor or to lose his life, with his lance in hand, charged Gandalin in such sort, that both man and horse had like to fallen to the ground, and withal he brake his spear: wherefore taking his Sword in hand, striking on both sides, and thinking to be seconded by his fellows, put his horse in such a fury, that whether he would or not, he bare him to ỹ middle of the bridge: where thinking to stay, ỹ horses feet slid from him, whereby both he and his master fell into the river and were drowned: whereat the Turks gave so great a cry, that they seemed mad, and how-

bowing down their heads thinking to acquit their loss, used all the force they could on both sides the bridge to enter upon the four knights: who sustained their assault so bravely, that the Turks at last were forced to recoil, whereof nine were thrown into the water, but Esplandian and his company were so weary, that in a manner they could fight no longer. With that they perceibed their aid in all haste coming towards them: the occasion why they stayed so long was because Frenace, Frandalos squire, that went to seek Manley and the rest, thinking to find his master where he left him, had led them thither, but not finding them there, supposed them to be gone unto the bridge: & to say truth, they arribed in very good time, for that Esplandian and his three companions were almost clean out of breath: but when they perceibed their aid, never did poor prisoners that were set at liberty more rejoyce, nor were better pleased: and the Turks on the contrary side never more astonished, yet they held close together, determining rather to revenge their deaths than once to yield unto their enemies: so that before the Knights of Galatia could enter in among them, they gabe them much to do, although in the end they obercame them, whereby not one escaped alibe, to carry news unto their friends. Enil at the first onset had been sore wounded, as you heard before, wherefore he caused his wounds to be searched: the like did the rest of the hurt Knights. Which done they set forward to Galatia, contenting themselbes for that day with y victory it had pleased God to send them. And coming to the gate, they found Urganda ready to receibe them: who knowing how all had past, and the danger wherein Esplandian had been, jestingly said unto him: In faith my Lord, said she, if I were afraid of death when I fell into Melies hands, I beliebe you were not in much better case since that I saw you last, as I understand by those that know what damnage you were in. Madam (said he) I know I am a mortal man, and that my life and death are in the hands of God, as it pleaseth him to dispose, and I confess unto you, if we had not been succored, that in the end we could not habe endured: yet am I well assured, that before it had come to pass, we had laid so many enemies on the ground, that the rest should habe had greater

cause

cause to lament their loss, than boast of their conquest. Urganda perceived by Esplandian words that he liked not her speech, whereupon she said unto him: My Lord, pardon me I beseech you, and excuse the indiscretion of a woman, specially in me, who at this present had forgotten my self. Madam (said Esplandian) you may command me, and likewise set me forth for a coward, hardy, or any other what it pleaseth you to tearm me. In which manner talking together, they came unto his lodging, where master Elizabeth (newly come from Alfarin) visited his wounds, and the rest likewise that had cause to use his help.

CHAP. XLII.

How the Knights of great *Brittain* that were at *Galatia*, imbarqued themselves with *Urganda* in the great Serpent, to sail unto *Constantinople*, and what happened unto them.

The Knights that had been hurt at the last encounter, for the space of fifteen days after were forced to keep their chambers until their wounds were healed: during which time, Urganda took great pleasure in reading Melies books which Esplandian caused to be brought unto her: wherein she found such wonderful conjurations and devises of Magick Art, that she was abashed how she that had them so long time in her possession, knew no more than yet she did, esteeming the Enchantress Lady to have been the perfectest scholar that ever studied in that art, as it well appeared by her books. Now the time approached wherein it was expedient (according to the destinies appointed) that Esplandian and his companions should go unto Constantinople: wherefore as soon as their wounds were healed, Urganda caused them to be assembled, and standing in the midest of them all, she said unto them: My good friends, knowing part of the prosperities and adversities which the heavens foreshew unto you all, I came hither specially to see Esplandian and you, of whom I have received great pleasure, perceiving at my arrival the love and amity that is among you, with the great desire you have to accomplish the order of knighthood: not for the glory and recompence of this world, but onely for the increasing of our

faith

faith and the ſervice of God, that ſhall reward you for it: and to the end you may continue in this forwardneſs, & that the thing which I pretend, may happily fall out, I will from henceforth not onely imploy my perſon by my Art, which hath pleaſed God to lend me, wherewith I will adviſe you what I ſhall find convenient and neceſſary for the augmentation of your honors already ſpread throughout the world: which to begin I am of opinion, that you all imbarque your ſelves with me in the great Serpent, that ſhall bring us unto Conſtantinople to the Emperor, for without him it is impoſſible that this great enterprize you have taken in hand can come to good effect: as alſo that he himſelf before many years are paſt, ſhall be found in marvellous neceſſity, and ſuch, that he ſhall account himſelf moſt happy to have your aid: and with good reaſon, for that in the end both he and you ſhall obercome thoſe hazards according to your deſires. Then ſhall you plainly know, that this that I foreſhew unto you is moſt true. While Urganda uſed theſe words, all the company ſtood ſtill intentive for to hear her: and had it not been that they eſteemed her words to be moſt true, they had doubted of the threatnings ſhe uſed againſt the Emperor, he being ſo great and puiſſant a Monarch. Nevertheleſs the iſſue of that trouble which ſhe aſſured unto them, gave them ſome eaſe and contentation of mind: in expectation whereof, they made account in the mean time to probe their ſtrengths and forces, that thereby their valor and magnanimity might be further ſpread abroad. And as touching their voyage to the Emperor, as Urganda gave them direction, it was onely the thing whereupon Eſplandian did aſpire, hoping that if the wars were openly proclaimed in the Grecian Empire, and the Emperors danger ſo imminent, to ſhew ſuch valor and prowes in martial exploits, that he would not onely free and acquit his father of the promiſe he had made to ſerve the Ladies, but confirm the love that ỳ Princeſs Leonorine bare unto him, in ſuch ſort, that he might obtain her for his wife: which cauſed him to ſpeak for all his company, aſſuring Urganda that not one of them but was ready to obay and go where it pleaſed her. My friends (ſaid ſhe) then I pray you to morrow in the morning cauſe your horſes to

be

be ſhipped in my ſhip, and for armour take you no care, I forth prouide you thereof ſo well, that each man ſhall find himſelf content: let it ſuffice you to imbarque your ſelues and ſet ſail: for often times an enterpriſe deferred ouer long, falleth not out as men deſire it ſhould, not for want of good and wiſe counſel, but by the negligence of thoſe that are appointed to execute the ſame. Thus was their voyage to Conſtantinople agreed upon, in ſuch ſort, that all the knights of great Brittain entred into the great Serpent, taking with them Frandola, Melie, and the captain of Teſifant that had been taken priſoner, as you heard before, leauing the Admirals ſouldiers for garriſon in the town. Which done, the ſhip went forward of it ſelf, ſayling towards the Caſtle the defended mountain, where being arriued they took Armato king of Turky and his two captains with them: for Urganda willed them ſo to do: and ſix days after, the great Serpent arriued within half a mile of Conſtantinople, where ſhe ſtayed. Then Urganda cauſed her knights to be armed with the armor ſhe had brought, which were white, with a red croſs both before and behind, moſt comely to behold. They were in all forty knights, whoſe names are as followeth: Eſplandian, Frandalo, Norandel, Talanque, Manley the wiſe, Ambor of Gandel, Grauate of the fearful valley, Gandalin, Enil, Trian couſin to Queen Briolany, Bravor ſon to the Giant Balan, Belleris, Elion le Delibere, Licoran of the white Tower, Liſtoran of the ſilver bridge, Landin of Sariaque, Imoſil of Burgondy, Ledadrin of Ferraque, Sarquiles couſin to Angriotes, Palomir, Branfil, Tantiles the proud, Galbron Son of Iſamel, Carpin his Brother, Carin of Carante, Attalion Son of Olivas, Bracele Son of Bandoyvas, Garamante Son of Norgalles, Amphinio of Almain, Brandony of France, Penatry of Spain, Flamene his brother, Cuſpicio of Bohemia, Amandario of little Brittain, Silveſter of Hungaria, Manley of Swethland, Galfary of Italy, Galiot of Scotland, Amandaly, his brother, and Calfeur the glorious. Being arriued, the ſhip was preſently eſpyed by the Citizens which they knew, having ſeen it before when it put them in ſuch fear, as you have heard, but hoping for him that uſed ordinarily to ſayl therein, they all ran unto the walls, and along the ſhore to ſee him land, where-

with

with the noise and rumor was so great, that the Emperor had news thereof being as then talking with the Ladies. Those news pleased the Princess Leonorine so well, that she no sooner heard the great Serpent named, but she rose up and went unto the windows to see if she could espy her lobe Esplandian: but the ship was somewhat too far off, neither did it move from the place whereas it lay. Wherefore fearing to be deceived as she had been before, she began to change colour: which Queen Minoresse perceived, and jesting said unto her: Madam, do you make this pitiful countenance to dissemble the joy you have conceived, or for fear I should beguile you of him that cometh to see you? How now cousin (said she) how long have you learned to mock? In faith I never thought upon the first of those two points, and much less am I in doubt of the second, for you know as much as my self and yet I am not ignorant that when the great Serpent was there where I now behold it, he whom we expect came not hither, wherefore I fear (and with good reason) that we shall now be served in like sort: and as she ended her speech, the ship came within a bow shot of the haven where they might perceive one of her sides to open, from whence they put out a boat, and not long after they saw Carmelle and two other gentlewomen come forth, the two Gentlewomen playing most sweetly upon two instruments, which they did till they arrived at the shore: from whence they went unto the Emperor, who knowing Carmelle, had better hope to see Esplandian than ever he had before: so going unto her to ask what news, she made no more reverence unto him than she used at other times to do, saying unto him: My lord, Esplandian my master (that you so much desire to see) is now arrived before the town in the great Serpent with divers other Knights his friends and allies, and Urganda la Discogneve, desiring you to shew them the favor to stay in your Pallace, where they mean to come and visit your Grace. Truly Carmelle (said the Emperor) I never heard message in all my life that pleased me so well, I am content to do as they desire, although I was determined to meet them, and to give them that entertainment they deserve: But seeing they will have it otherwise, I will satisfie their desires. That is sufficient (said Carmelle) we will

then

then return to thom again, to certifie your Graces answer. Go (said the Emperor) and tell them from me, that they shall be most heartily welcome. With that Carmelle with the two Gentlewomen departed towards the Haven: mean time, whosoever had beheld the Princess Leonorine, might easily have judged the alteration of her heart, it was so full of joy, that without Queen Minoresse that caused her to refrain, she would peradventure have done something whereby her honor had been blemished, minding to leave the Empress her mother, and go to meet Esplandian, whose absence had procured so great sorrow in her mind. But the Queen as a wise and discreet lady perswaded her so much, that she stayed at the windowe, whereby her alteration might not be perceived. Carmelle staied not long, but went into the boat, rowing to the great Serpent, where being entred, there were presently two boats more put forth that brought horses to land, which done, they returned again to fetch the knights, and those that would went forth, and among them six gentlewomen, three of them sounding the recorders, then ceasing, the other three played on the Lute and Vials, in that manner being landed and mounted on their horses, they entred into the City the six Gentlewomen marching first, after them the two Turkish Captains that were taken at the siege of the Castle the defended mountain, then the Captain of Tesifant, next followed Armato, and with him the Princess Melie, apparrelled in the bear-skin as she had been taken, then followed the forty Knights two in a rank, armed horse and man in one sort of armor, in the middest of them road Urganda, talking to Esplandian and the King of Denmark. And as they approached the Pallace, the Emperor, the Empress, and the Ladies met them, where the Emperor coming to Urganda, did her as much honor as if she had bin the greatest Queen in the world. Mean time the Knights being among the Ladies, gave occasion to be found no less courteous, then prompt and valiant in arms, especially Esplandian, who coming to the Princess Leonorine, kneeled on the ground to kiss her hands, but she refused it making the whole company believe, she was offended with him for delaying the time to come unto the court as he had promised.

Which the Emperor perceiving, could not refrain to smile, and said unto her: How now daughter? Is this the good entertainment you shew unto your knight, and the thanks you give him, for coming expressly hither to serve you? I pray you call to mind, that he deserveth a better countenance, were it onely for his fathers sake, to whom you are so much beholding. My lord (said she) that is the cause I am so much offended with him, for if he resembled the knight with the green Sword as much in courtesie as in countenance, he had not staied so long to obay his fathers will, and to satisfie the requests that you and I have made unto him by Carmelle and others, as your Grace knoweth Before God (said the Emperor) and say true: yet I could never have him perswaded you would conceive displeasure so long time, considering what he hath done, and the rich presents he sent to you. My Lord (said she) if he hath done any thing for me it was without my commandment, I had rather he had done less in those things, and that he had bin more obedient to his fathers will and mine. Madam (said the Emperor to Urganda) you see in my daughter how great the choler of an angry woman is. My Lord (said she) she hath reason so to do, for that Esplandian obaying his father, ought to confirm himself both to her will and yours. And having failed therein, all he saith that he hath done for her sake, may be accounted nothing, although I am assured, that the remembrance of my Lady your daughter hath made him (being in fight) enter into such danger, that it was most strange how he could escape. Wherefore Madam (said she to Leonorine) he deserveth pardon for the same, and so I pray you grant him. While Urganda spake, the Princess beheld Esplandian with so great affection, that in a manner she lived and died in him: and he for his part by her felt in what sort love useth those he holds in his power. Whereby she continued a time without answering Urganda not for any evil will to her in using of these speeches, but rather feeling such alteration in her mind, that she trembled like a leaf. But in the end she remembred herself, and said unto her: Madam, seeing it is your pleasure that I remit his offence, I am content to do it, upon condition, that if he forget himself as he hath done heretofore,

you shall bear the punishment for him. With that she took him by the hand, and made him rise up, changing speech, because the Empress (that in the mean time talked with the King of Denmark) came thither, whereby Esplandian was constrained to leave the Princess, and salute her. The Emperor all that while had given no entertainment to King Armato, as knowing him not, but when they shewed him which was he, he imbraced him and said: My Lord and brother, I beseech you pardon my ignorance, in not entertaining you before this time, as not knowing you, but I will amend the fault when you think good. My Lord (said Armato) I am now (as it pleaseth fortune) in place where you may command me, yet I pray you call to mind who I was, and what I may be, and do for me as you would I should do for you if your case were mine: Considering with your self, that the like hard fortune may fall on you, and that it is no less vertue to intertain the banquished courteously then to overthrow the puissant enemy. With that the Emperor led him into his pallace, the rest following after him, and when they were in the Hall, he left them with the Empress to speak unto Frandalo, and taking him aside, said unto him: Frandalo, to let you know how well I do account of the great good service you have done for me, I will that from henceforth you shal be my chief Standard Bearer, in which place I now establish you. For the which Frandalo thanked him most humbly, accounting himself most happy to have so great authority.

CHAP. XLIII.

How *Norandel* and Queen *Minoresse* fell in love one of the other, and what conference they had together.

The Emperor being among his Knights, making them all the charge and honor that he could devise. It happened that the princess Leonorine and Queen Minoresse seeing the King of Denmark and Norandel together, called Carmelle, and asked her who they were. My Ladies (said she) you have seen him that hath the least beard here before, (which is the King of Denmark) for he came hither with Frandalo, the other is Norandel king

Luisarts Son, estéemed foz one of the hardiest Knights liuing en the earth. I pzay you (said the Pzinces) desire them to come hither, that we may speak with them. With that Carmelle called them unto her, and as they were befoze the two Pzinceses the moze they beheld the excellency of their beauties, the moze they marvelled at it, and not without cause, foz next unto Leonorine there could hardly be found in all Greece one that matched Queen Minoresse, especially in comelines and good behaviоz, but if she had some perfection in her, nature had not forgotten her self in forming the two Knights, especially Norandel, who till that time had never felt the stings of love, no moze had Quéen Minoresse. Nevertheless, that little thief surpzised them so covertly, that he bound them both, making them captives one to the other, in such manner, that after many Questions and Answers propounded they drew themselves apart, leaving ỳ King of Denmark talking with the Pzinces Leonorine, the Queen asking Norandal what he thought of ỳ Pzinces. Madam (said he) although I have heard her estéemed foz one of the goodliest Ladies in the world, yet did I never think her beauty had béen such as now I sée it is, althought you are little behind her in ỳ respect, whereby I might estéem my self most happy if I had bin asléep that day I entetpzised to take my journey hither. Wherefoze (said the Quéen) have you had so ill entertainment in this Court? No Madam (said he) but there is one hath stolen that from me which I have most carefully kept during my life. The Quéen not knowing what he meant, was thereat abashed, asking him what it was, and whither he knew the thief. I Madam (said he) and it resteth in you to do me justice, if it be your pleasure: foz you and none other have that wherecf I speak. In good faith (said the Quéen) you shall pardon me, foz I have nothing of yours that I can remember. Madam (said Norandel) since the time I first did know what belonged to a man, I kept my liberty, not alienating it to any one: But coming hither (I had no sooner set mine eye on you) but I found my self of a freeman a bondslaue and captive to your Ladyships good favoz: which I beséech you affozd me, in recompence of the liberty you now have taken from me. Truly sir knight (said she) you have at this pzesent run too far astray, foz if you beheld me

as you should, you had not found me such a one as you say, and would have bin twice advised to use such speeches as you do. Nevertheless, I will not take them at your hands (being a stranger) in so evil part as mine honor doth require, and I think likewise you speak far otherwise then you mean: which she said to undermine him. Thereby to see if Norandels words were spoken from the heart, who hearing that overthwart answer, was much astonished, but being moved with love, answered her and said: Madam, pardon my boldness I beseech you, but I swear unto you, by the faith of a Knight, that I have discovered the secret of my heart: and if you will not believe me at this time, I hope in time to come to do so much, that you shall well perceive what great desire I have to be your Knight, if it will please you to grant me so much favor to accept me for the same. When Queen Minoresse perceived him so earnest, as that in uttering those words she shewed great affection, she estéemed in her mind to have sufficient argument that might perswade her to believe his words, wherewith she answered him and said: My Lord Norandel, If you do as you promise, I well believe that you say: and for the accepting you to be my Knight, me thinketh I should do wrong to refuse so small a favor to so courteous a gentleman as you are: wherefore I both grant it and desire it of you. With that she took a little ring (she commonly wore) off from her finger, giving it unto him for a witness of their new confirmed aliance: And had it not bin that the Emperor was ready to go to supper, they had no sooner left talking, but the Empress went in, whereby Queen Minoresse was constrained to follow after, taking Melie and Carmelle with her, to whom she did all honor and good entertainment she could devise: Supper being done, and the tables uncovered, the Princess Leonorine that had seen Norandel and Queen Minorelle talking with so great affection, doubted some feathers in the wind, wherefore taking her aside, said unto her: Cousin, I believe the knight that entertained you so long, told you some news out of Great Britain, or something else that pleased you full well, I pray you fair Lady tell me what it was, for you were very earnest to harken thereunto. How now Madam: (said she) since when I pray you, did you learn to mock: call.

Call you that mocking (said she) which is done in earnest: I pray God the mockery I mean to you, may fall out as I desire it would, then shall I at the least have as good advantage at you, as you have had at me, which would please me well, not so much to have a companion in mine own estate, as to yield you in exchange the like pleasure I have received at your hands, when you first were made acquainted with the love betwéen Esplandian and me. Wherefore fear not to utter your minde unto me, otherwise I will from henceforth have you in a jealousie, for that you have already done, or yet would do. Madam (said the Quéen) rather than you should do so, I will declare to you the secretest thing I know. The Knight (said she) whereof you speak (I know not by what meaṅs) hath so captivated my minde, that I feel the thing in my self which I never thought would have happened unto me. And as they that are molested with a continual Ague, do finde the taste of water better than the hope of life to them: so I likewise, that was accustomed not onely to contemn the force of Love, but blame all such as yield to his might, (estéeming their estate rather voluntary than forcible) finde my self so much surprised, that if God help me not, I am in the greatest danger that ever poor woman was. What (said the Princess) think you my Lord Norandel is of so hard a heart and little courtesie, as that he would disdain the love of so fair and comely a Lady as you are? Do you perceive by him that his minde is placed elsewhere? No Madam (said she) but to the contrary, he protested to be wholly mine, without any further advantage, then that I have accepted him for my knight. Truly (said Leonorine) I am glad thereof, and if you had done otherwise, he might surely have complained, and you much more, to have refused so great a good, when it is offered without dissimulation: else if it be otherwise, it is no good, but rather a curse. I am of this opinion (said she) that my Lord Norandel would rather die a thousand deaths than bear that minde: wherefore determine I pray you, to use him well, assuring you, that I will not fail to succor you in what I may, and will do for you as you have done for me. So long they talked together, that the Emperor and his company risen from the Table, came to sée the

Ladies.

Ladies. Nevertheles neither the Princes nor Quëen Minoresse could have the means to entertain their friends, but onely with a look, whereby (their hearts panting in their bellies) were somewhat eased: when night approached, every man withdrew him to his rest, but when Quëen Minoresse found her self alone, and in her bed, she began to think upon the speeches that Norandel used unto her, sometimes determining to assay, if by any means she could drive the same out of her mind, and then presently changed thoughts, and said unto her self: Alas, was there ever greater constancy in a woman, then that I always had until this time? Must I now of force yield up the fort, that against so many hard assaults I held invincible? Alas, I now perceive it is of force, wherefore it is better presently to seek for remedy, then to consume thus secretly as I do. Alas what? If I chance in this sort to yield unto mine own desire, (poor soul that I am) then do I manifestly perceive the danger wherein I fall, and the thraldom that I bring my self into, from whence while I live, I shall never escape. Wherefore it were far better for me to bridle mine own affection, and command that which commandeth me, then do that which hereafter I might repent. With that she held her peace, and turning on each side, like one not well at ease in body nor in mind, she had no sooner resolved one thing, but presently dissolved it again, so great was her inconstancy therein. Nevertheless, having well debated with her self all the pleasures or displeasures that might chance thereby: In the end, with a loud voice she uttered these words: I know not what may come to pass, but Love promiseth me great things: Wherefore if the worst fal out, and that from hencefurth I forget my self, he shall bear the blame, and not I, that will do nothing but under his protection: In which opinion, she fell a sleep, and the next day Norandel and she finding means to talk together, they confirmed their love in such sort, that they determined to use the same more by wisdom, then by passion: which they that are in like case, ought to follow, thereby to attain unto the point of their desired joys, which in times past before, was commonly called the gracious gifts of Mercy.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIIII.

How *Urganda* declared unto the Emperor the ſignification of the Propheſie that was found in the tomb, and of two Dragons that carried her with King *Armato* and *Melie* up into the air, and ſet them in the middle of the City of *Teſiſant*.

YOu heard before how Carmelle in her ſhip, ſhewed the Emperor the tomb that Eſplandian had conquered in the Rock of the Enchantreſs with the Image of Jupiter, and the Propheſie he held within his hand, which the Emperor remembred ſo well, that he never ceaſed to think thereon. Whereby, the next day after the arribal of that noble company in the City of Conſtantinople, he calling to mind that there could no perſon be found in all the world better able to reſolve his doubt, then Urganda was, cauſed her to go into the cloſet, where the Empereſs with the Princeſs Leonorine, Queen Minoreſſe, and no more, ſtayed for her: they five being together, the Emperor cauſed the Image of Jupiter to be brought thither: which done, he ſaid unto Urganda; Madam, I pray you do me ſo much pleaſure as to declare (if it be poſſible) what are the meaning of the Letters that this Image holdeth. With that Urganda read it, and having conſidered thereof, ſhe ſaid unto the Emperor: My Lord, the great knowledge and skill that this Idol hath foreſhowen ſhall in time to come be loſt, is already happened: for as you know, the power of Jupiter and of other gods, hath been ſuppreſſed and abolished by the coming of Jeſus Chriſt: and as touching theſe words, The bondſlave of the bond of ſlavery ſhall be burried here, and life reſtored by him that ſuffered death. Theſe are hard and obſcure tearmes, yet will I declare them to your Grace as well as poſſibly I may. With that Leonorine and Queen Minoreſſe thought: ſhe would have ſpoken of the Knight Eſplandian that had been put into a Cedar Cheſt, as you heard before: wherewith they being ſurpriſed with a deadly fear, began to behold each other in moſt pitiful manner: which Urganda well perceiving, intending to eaſe their mindes continued her diſcourſe in this manner: My Lord (ſaid ſhe) this pro-

Prophecy was written concerning Matroco Lord of the Castle of the defended mountain, who as you know was always a Pagan till his latter day that he became a Christian, whereby long time he continued a bond-slave of the bond of slavery: for such ought the Sect of Idolatry to be named: but Esplandian perceiving his repentance, suffered him to be buried in the hermitage, where as yet Carmelles father doth remain, who since that time hath so much honored the Giants body, that she hath buried his bones within the Cedar Chest, that you Madam (said she to Leonorine) if you do remember, gave unto her: And touching these lines which contain these words, That life shall be restored by him that suffered death: that is likewise to be understood of him, for that loosing this transitory life, he hath obtained the eternal in Abrahams bosom: so great grace hath he receiv'd at the hands of God by the merit of his Sons passion, in whom he did believe, as I said before: and so my Lord (said she) you have heard what I can say as touching this strange Prophecy. Ey but (said the Emperor) what means the rest? My Lord (said she) I can tell you no more of it than can my Lady your daughter, or Queen Minoresse, but so much I can assure you, that in short time you shall see it come to pass: and if in any point it concerneth you, the best is it will all fall out to greater good of your soul, than to any power or worldly glory: wherewith for this present I pray you content your self. I truly (said the Emperor) and so will I always do: for so my soul be well, I estéem not the misery or torments of my body. And with that he left Urganda with the Empress, & went into the Hall, where great number of Knights and Gentlemen stayed for him: with whom he passed the rest of the day in all pleasant delights: mean time fortune by little and little began to play her part, and to spread the nets wherewith she meant to inclose that troop, thereby to work the enby and great tribulations that afterward fell upon them: the beginning whereof was such as you shall hear.

About a mile without the City, the Emperor had built a sumptuous Palace, called Vaelbeniatnof, as like to that of Apollidon in the Firm Isle, as well could be devised: which place was compassed with a Park furnished with all things requisite for

mans delight, whither he meant to lead the Ladies, with Esplandian and his company, as also king Armato, to feast them in the same, and for that purpose within three days after their arrival, they departed from the City of Constantinople, and went to Vaelbeniatnof, going into the park, wherein they found the hunters, and at their first entrance a great Hart was singled out, which in the end after long chace was killed almost before the Ladies: and going further, they espyed a Wolfe so fiercely hunted by dogs, that they made him turn, and with his Tusks strake the dogs, that none durst set upon him: but at the last one of the hunters strake him in the throat, and so he died: so long this sport endured, that supper time drew on, wherefore the Lords and Ladies entring into the pallace found the tables covered, and sitting down, were served in most sumptuous manner: and having supped, they began to dance, which continued till midnight, minding the next day to begin their sport again: but fortune minding to bear a part, did so trouble the feast that she gave them well to understand, how she can work in all things at her pleasure: for the next day about evening the Knights and Ladies being in the Park, some talking with those to whom they bare affections, and contenting their mind with such devises as love to pass the time in pleasure, put into their heads, others running about and taking pleasure to gather flowers, and do as most delighted them. Melie (from whom till then they could not bear one word) went unto Urganda, and before them all spake unto her and said: Madam, I marvel (if it be so that your learning and skill be such as is reported) why you make no sport unto this company. Melie (said Urganda) where you are present I will not undertake to do it before you, but you should rather do it, being well assured, that the Emperor would be thankful for the same. If it pleaseth him (said she) I am content, upon condition, that after me you do the like, or better if you can. Truly (said the Emperor) it is but reason: and I pray you both to do it. My Lord (said Melie) then command Urganda to lend me a book that I was wont to have, whereon the picture of Medea, (and her name written over it) doth stand, then shall you behold some of mine art, and if Urganda never knew it before.

fore, she may learn it now of me. In good faith (said Urganda) that will I not deny you: with that she called one of her Gentlewomen, willing her to fetch the book: meantime Melie took King Armato by the hand, and making as though she would speak a word with him, they walked a while together, then they sat them down hard by the place where the Empress and the Ladies were talking with each other, and staying till the thing Melie had requested, were brought unto her, she having it in her hand opened the book, and then began to read, making certain signs with her eyes lifted up to heaven and calling Urganda, prayed her to come thither, saying she should see that she never had seen before. Urganda not doubting any treason by Melie prepared, went and sat down by her, and next her King Armato, so that she sat between Melie and him, where Melie began to turn the book, shewing them certain prophesies, and other strange devises, which continued not long but the air began to be covered with a round black cloud, and therewith it seemed so dark, that they could not see each other, at the last the cloud opened, and they beheld two horrible Dragons coming down out of the cloud that drew a waggon, and staved right before Urganda, who by Armato and Melie was so straitly embraced, that whither she would or not they thrust her in, and they after her. Wherewith the Dragons seeing their waggon charged, flew up into the air, and carried them away, Urganda crying for help, but all in vain: for in less than the twinckling of an eye she was out of sight: wherewith there was such a noise among the company, that Esplandian, Talanque, Ambor, Manley, and the rest of the Knights that came thither with her, swear never to rest above one night in a place before they found her out: so that the same day taking their leaves, both of the Emperor and others, that by them were left in sorrow, they entred again into the great Serpent, but before Esplandian went, he spake unto the Princess Leonorine, beseeching her not to take in evil part his enterprise taken in hand for the love of her, to whom he found himself so much beholding, promising her that presently (having found Urganda) he would return again. My good friend (said she) me thinkes you should do this at bet-

ter leiſure, and not in ſo great haſte as now you do: yet am I well content to do as pleaſeth you: but forget not I pray you (ſaid ſhe) to return again as you have promiſed. Which Eſplandian bowed upon his faith: mean time Norandel and Queen Minoreſſe (as much griebed as might be) knew not what countenance to hold, having their hearts ſo ſeized with care, that the Queen was conſtrained to withdraw her ſelf into her chamber, and lay upon her bed, ſhutting the dore: whereby Norandel had no meanes to take his leave, but imbarqued himſelf, charged with an infinite number of griefes and ſorrowes: with that the great Serpent began of it ſelf to ſet forward, and within two days after arrived at the Caſtle of the defended mountain.

CHAP. XLV.

How the two Dragons ſet *Urganda*, *Melie*, and King *Armato* in the middle of the City of *Teſiſant*, and of the great army that *Armato* prepared to enter into *Greece*.

The Dragons bearing Urganda, Melie, and King Armato, in the air, flew ſo ſwiftly, that before day they were right ober the City of Teſifant, where they ſet down their charge: that done, they flew away, and neber were ſeen again. King Armato was exceeding glad when he perceibed himſelf to be in place whereas he might command, and went unto his pallace, where finding the guard, he made himſelf known unto them, they preſently went to adbertiſe the Prince Alphorax, who much abaſhed at thoſe newes, ſtart out of his bed, and caſting a furred gown upon his ſhouldiers, ran to imbrace his father, who ſeemed to be ſo changed, not onely becauſe his beard was longer than he uſed, but by reaſon of the great grief and melancholly he had ſo long endured, that the Prince began to weep, and ſay unto him: My Lord, you are more than heartily welcome, for Gods cauſe I beſeech you tell us how fortune hath been ſo much your friend to deliber you out of the miſery wherein you habe continued ſo long, to my no little grief. Son (ſaid he) Melie can tell you better than my ſelf, for ſhe is the only meanes of my good hap, and hath brought with her Urganda diſcogneve,

(of

(of whom heretofore you have heard.) And as he left speaking, Melie and Urganda entred into the hall, wherewith the rumor of the Kings return was so great within the City, that all the people ran unto the palace for to see him, being as glad of his arrival, as Urganda sorry to see her self in such a place, and that which griebed her more, was that Melie in presence of them all, spake unto her and said: Urganda, two things move me to save thy life: the one, for that in my captivity thou hast not once suffered an evil word to be used to me, neither permitted that any man should do me harm: the other because I certainly know that King Armato hath by thy means received all the good intertainment he had, during his hard imprisonment. Nevertheless, the mischief thou hast procured unto this country (being the onely cause the Christians entered into the same) is sufficient to make thee indure perpetual imprisonment: wherein by mine art I will so straightly inclose thee, that thy Art shall nought abail thee ever to get forth. But although that sentence might well abash Urganda, yet she shewed such constancy, that she never changed colour, determining with her self to indure whatsoever should fall out, wherefore she said unto Melie: Madam, you may do with me as pleaseth you, but in reason you ought not to use me otherwise then you your self were used when I had the like authority over you, as you have now of me, otherwise you shall do wrong both to your self and me: To me, that am old and ancient, putting me in prison, wherewith you threaten me, (not having offended you,) and to your self, in preferring cruelty before the courtesie that hath bin found in you: whereto Melie answered her not a word, but commanded her to be shut into a great tower standing in the midst of thy City, over the which she wrought such conjurations, that Urganda knew without Gods help, it would be impossible for her ever to come forth: yet she lived in hope, considering the mutability of fortune, and the King Armato himself had ben casually delivered, who continued certain days in his great City of Tesifant, without making any shew to be revenged. But in the end he sent Embassadors to all the Princes in the East that were his allies and confederates, desiring them to enter into arms, not

onely

onely to drive the Christians out of Galatia, Alfarin, and other places that they had usurped in his Countrey, but to destroy Constantinople, with all the Christian Monarchs, and therefore wrote a Letter unto them, the Contents whereof do follow.

ARmato, by the providence of our immortal gods, called to the Government of the puissant Countrey of *Turky*, the Frontier and Bulwark of all the Pagan Land, to all Caitifs, Kings, Soldiers, Admirals and Governors of the Countreys scituated in the East parts, sendeth greeting: Being returned out of prison, from whence we are now delivered, I thought good to give you to understand, that not long since there is a Knight come out of the South into the Marches, descended (as men say) of the Race of *Brutus* the Trojan, to whom for our injustice (as it is very likely) our gods have given power to conquer the Castle of *the defended mountain*, slaying *Matroco* and *Frerion*, two of the best Knights in all the East parts: and which is worse (the number of the Christians increasing more and more) they have sought all means to destroy our holy Law: which to prevent, we entred into arms, and having raised a mighty Army, thought to drive them out of our quarters: but having long time continued siege before the Castle of *the defended mountain*, and brought it to such extremity, that they had no victuals to sustain themselves; he of whom we were most in doubt, the first beginner of those wars, found means by the aid of a villain named *Frandalo* (that sometime belonged unto us) to enter therein, and by subtilty to take us prisoners, in such sort, that our Army being overthrown, we remained prisoners in their hands, where they have holden us in straight keeping almost for the space of a whole year together: mean time our fortune continuing worse and worse, they have by treason seized upon the Towns of *Alfarin* and *Galatia*, two of the best Ports in all our Realm: which they had never taken in hand without the aid of the traiterous and disloyal Emperor of *Constantinople*; who for to aid and succor them, hath fallly broken the Truce concluded between us, and raised so many men, that without your aids, we are in danger to fall into their hands, a thing that would concern you much, seeing we (as

you

you know) are the Frontier and Rampart to you all. Wherefore in the name of all our gods, we pray and desire you, that not onely for the safeguard of our Law, but for the profit and utility of all the East countreys, you will assemble your Forces in so great number, that thereby we may drive these Christians out of our Countrey, and conquer the Empire of *Constantinople*, even to *France*, and the Countreys of *Great Brittain*, which will be both easie and profitable unto us.

These Letters written and the Messengers dispatched, they made such haste, that before the end of July following there were so many men assembled at the port of Tenedos, that the Christians had news thereof, as hereafter you shall hear. One day among the rest as Belleris, Talanque, and Manley being issued out of the Castle of the defended mountain, hoping to take some Turk in the way to Tesifant that might tell them news, not onely of the King Armato, but of Melie and Urganda, as day began to appear they came unto the adventurous fountain, where they beheld the pillars of brass, the pavillion, and the field-bed that Heliaxe had left there, with a great Serpent lying therein, which presently began to run away, and the Knights after, thinking to kill her, but their horses durst not go nèer her, yet she began to complain and weep as bitterly as a woman travelling with childe. Wherewith there appeared four men well mounted and armed at all points, that cryed out and said: Sir Knights, depart from hence and trouble not our gentlewoman in this sort, or it shall cost you your lives. And scarce had they ended their speech, but they ran each at other, the strange knights breaking their spears in such manner upon the Christians, that Manley and his companions thought they had run against them with long strawes. Yet could not one of them couch his launce, but ran their course without once touching them. Mean time, the Serpent entred into a hole, and could no more be seen, and as they turned their horses to run another course, the four Knights would not abide, but flying away, cryed unto them and said: Sir Knights, our Gentlewoman is safe, for the rest content your selves if you think good. Get you hence to all the devils (said Talanque) and ill fortune might he have that fol-

loweth

loweth after you. With that they three returned unto the fountain, not without great laughing at their adventure. And as they were before the pavillion, they perceived a Knight that watered his horse, to whom Belleris riding, asked him his name: What have you to do therewith? (said he.) So much (said Belleris) that either you shall tell me presently with good will, or else shall fight with me. You shall fail in the one, but not in the other: for although you be three, yet am I well content to prove what the Knights of Great Brittain can do. When Talanque heard him speak so boldly, he could not refrain to say: By God Sir Knight, that you shall prove without delay, and setting spurs to his horse, ran fiercely against the other that refused him not, but strake him so sure, that he overthrew him to the ground. Which Manley wondring at, set forward to revenge his friend: but if the first sped ill, he sped no better, no more did Belleris: all three rising up again, ashamed at their falls, which minding to amend by dent of Swords, the other Knight fled along the wood, crying so loud, that they might hear him say: Sir Knights, another time sit better on your horses, and trouble not your selves to follow me, if you mean not to lose your way. In Gods name (said Talanque) what may this mean, shall we have no better fortune all this day, I think we are inchanted. Let us mount upon our horses and follow after him, that we may know whether God or all the devils in hell have determined to cross us in this journey. Wherewith they mounted, determining to follow after the other, but they heard a lamentable voice, wherefore they stayed to see what it might be. With that they espyed a woman with her head undrest, crying out for help: And after her ran a Lion ready to devour her: whereat they being moved with compassion, thought to step between them, but the Lion began so horribly to roar, that the horses stricken with fear, bare their masters above two long bows shot from thence: mean time, the woman and the Lion banished away, whereat Talanque and Manley more abashed then before, asked Belleris if ever he heard of such adventures. In good faith (said he) those that are desirous to see strange things, must repair unto this fountain: For there are many (and such as yet

you

you have not seen) that wonder it is to hear, and will you know how it cometh to pass? Me ie had devised them long time since, wherefore it is not to be marvelled. Now ze I do not (said Manley:) nevertheless, were it not for the enterprize we now have taken in hand, by the faith of a Knight (said he) I would not depart from hence before I had seen them all. That shall be at another time (said Belleris:) let us now keep on our way, that we be not discovered. With that they held on the left hand, always riding toward the City of Tesifant: and having ridden about five miles space, they met ten men on horseback all unarmed, leading two Gentlewomen, one of them being somewhat fair and well apparelled. But the ten men were in so great fear, that leaving the Gentlewomen, they ran and saved themselves not being pursued, for the three knights stayed with the Gentlewomen, of whom they hoped to hear such news as they desired. And in effect, after they had somewhat assured them, they asked them what news of king Armato, and whether he were still prisoner. My Lords (said the eldest Gentlewoman) it is not long since he escaped out of the Christians hands, and is returned to Tesifant with Melie, that hath shut Urganda in a Tower, from whence she shall never depart without her leave. That is good news for us then (said Belleris:) and what hath king Armato done since his return? Doth he not (said he) mean to be revenged on them that kept him prisoner so long? I trul (said she) for all the Kings, Souldans, Cailiffs, and Admirals of the Pagan Law, have promised him to arrive at Constantinople, and to destroy all Christendom. And as it is said, the most part of them are already arrived in the Isle of Tenedos. In good faith (said Belleris to his companions) considering the speeches of these gentlewomen, I am of this opinion, that we meddle no longer with them, but return unto our hold. Whereunto they both agreed, and letting the Gentlewoman depart, made so great haste, that about two hours after sun-setting, they arrived at the Castle of the defended mountain, where they shewed their companions what adventures they found in the adventurous Fountain. And at our departure (said they) we found ten men on horseback leading two Gentlewomen, by whom we have for certain understood, that

Urganda is straightly shut-up in one of the Towers of Tesifant, and so inchanted therein by Melies conjurations, that she is like neber to come forth, as also that the Pagan Kings assemble themselves together in the Isle of Tenedos, to ober-run the Emperor of Constantinople, and all the Christians country.

CHAP. XLVI.

How the Pirate *Crescelin*, nephew to the admiral *Tartary*, brought certain news to *Esplandian* of the great Army that the Lords of the East parts prepared to come unto *Constantinople*.

The repert that Belleris, Talanque, and Manley used to their companions as touching the great preparation the Pagans made to inbade the Empire of Constantinople and all Christendom, caused them to think thereon, in such sort, that they took counsel to determine among themselves, whether it were better for them to augument the Garisons of the Castle of the defended mountain, Alfarin, and Galatia, or go to Constantinople to aid the Emperor. And as they were in debating of the matter, Crescelin nephew to the Admiral of Greece, (that not long before had stollen ten Gallies from the Emperor to robe upon the Sea) came to advertise the Knights, that as he sailed into Phrigia, he had discobered in the Isle of Tenedos, so many Gallies, Foistes, and other bessels, of the enemies, that the Sea seemed cobered therewith, who without doubt assembled to ober-run the Emperor and destroy all Christendom: wherefore (said he) I thought to let you understand the same, not onely because you might probide for them, but also to desire your favors to entreat the Emperor in my behalf: assuring you, that if he pardon the offence I have committed against his Majesty I will from henceforth do him so good service, that he shall like it well. My Lord Crescelin (said Esplandian) I have always heard the Emperor reported to be one of the best Princes living in the world, and most easie to be appeased, when with reason men reconcile themselves unto him: wherefore I am assured, that if he know you mean faithfully to serve him as you protest, that he will not onely forget your fault, but do you much more good then to

others of his men: and the better to incite him thereunto, I am of this opinion, that with your ships you presently return to the Gulfe Propontide, and there (if it be possible) shall find the means to take some Turkish gally, thereby to know the truth of their intent: and if you will, Belleris shall go with you, and according to your reports, we will determine what were best for us to do, whereunto the Pirate willingly condescended: so that the same day he put to Sea, and with Belleris they coasted the country of Thrace unto Solombre, where staying secretly at the entry of the Gulfe, they continued certain days to bring their enterprise to pass: mean time Esplandian not being idle, and thinking upon the news that Crescelin brought, was of advise that Frandalo and all the other Knights of Great Brittain should return to Constantinople to aid the Emperor (which he desired them to do:) and I (said he) with the King of Denmark, Gandalin, and Enil, with the garrison of this place, will stay the return of those that are gone to Tenedos, and having spoken with them, either we will remain here still, or presently follow you. Estéem I pray you, if this opinion of Esplandian were liked of by Norandel, for that from ỹ day he left quéen Minoresse, he had not shewen a pleasant countenance, but was so melancholly that every man wondred thereat: and although the rest were not infected with the like disease, yet was there none that started back, but all agréed to Esplandians mind: whereupon without long delay, they imbarqued themselves with so good a wind, that the seventh day after they arrived at Constantinople, whereof the Emperor being advertised was exceéding glad, going to méet them at the haven: and having imbraced them one by one, not séeing Esplandian in their company, he asked where they left him: with that the Knights told him what intelligence they had received by Crescelins means from out of Asia, ỹ great danger prepared against him by the Kings of the East, how he and Belleris were returned to sée the countenance of the enemy, and to know more certain news: and lastly, what the occasion was why Esplandian staied behind in the castle of the defended mountain, with ỹ king of Denmark, Gandalin and Enil. The Emperor hearing these news, was much abashed, yet like a stout

and valiant Prince dissembled what he thought, and not long after (minding to prevent all inconveniences) in all haste caused Constantinople and his other towns, places, and havens of the Sea, to be provided of victuals and munition as he thought meetest for them: mean time sending forth his captains throughout all his Empire, to assemble men in all places, that might be ready when occasion served. Thus did the Emperor take care to provide for his affairs: wherein Norandel mean time to govern Minoresse, who minding to try him like gold within the fornace, one day among the rest shewed him a harder countenance than usually she did, faining she had received news that he loved a lady in great Brittain: wherein Norandel by all means sought to excuse himself: but the more he seemed constant, so much more did the Queen make him believe she thought the worse of him: wherewith he was in such perplexity, that he could not choose but say: In faith madam, as far as I perceive, you mean to end my days, for the wrong you do me is so great, that it cannot well be judged but by such as know your cruelty: and yet the affection I bear you is so great, that neither I nor any other can well express the same, if presently they do not shew the beauty and perfection wherewith nature hath adorned you. Wherefore estranging me from your wonted favor, I perceive my life begin to shorten, wherewith I am not grieved, were it not, that dying, I should loose the means to do you service, but not the benefit of loyalty: for whether I live or die, the same shall still accompany my soul unto the place of rest. Which words when Norandel had uttered, the tears trickled down his cheeks. Whereat Queen Minoresse took such pity, that forgetting her dissimulation, with a smiling countenance she answered him and said: My good friend, I now believe you well, and therefore I pray you pardon my indiscretion: for so it is, that this that I have done, hath been onely to avoid the means that should procure you to attempt the same. Now I well perceive your constancy (according to my counsel at your last departure hence) remember I beseech you how necessary dissimulation is to such as are infected with the like disease: I mean, it should not be between us two, but before the world that they perceive it not.

Madam

Madam (said Norandel) I will not, if I may offend your Grace, knowing mine own constancy so well, that impossible it were for me to withdraw my love from you, as also not to serve and honor you, yea though you should reward me with the greatest cruelties that all such as love and are not loved, might endure. While they thus debised together, the Princess Leonorine (that served them as a watch) entertained Frandalo and the rest, and making as if she knew not the cause of Esplandians return to Constantinople, she asked it of them, faining to be displeased at the same, but they excused him: in like sort they did unto the Emperor, as you heard before.

CHAP. XLVII.

How *Crescelin* and *Belleris* returned to the Castle of *the defended mountain*, with a ship that they had taken from the Turks, by whom they understood the enemies pretence.

NOt long after that Crescelin and Belleris departed from the Castle of the defended mountain, sayling as secretly as they could along the coast of Phrigia, fortune favored them so well, that a Brigandine sailing to Tenedos, charged with Turks fell into their hands, whereof they left but four alive: by whom they certainly understood, that the army of the Princes of the East was to depart from thence within a moneth or six weeks after at the furthest, and sail to Constantinople, which they hoped easily to surprise, having by their espials had intelligence that the Emperor made no preparation to withstand them. Which having heard, they returned without longer stay to give advise unto Esplandian, who fearing that the Emperor would not be able to withstand their might, determined to use the aid of all his friends, minding to send Gandalin and Enil unto them, with Letters to the same effect: especially to his uncle the Emperor of Rome to whom he wrote as followeth.

My Lord, the danger I see prepared against all Christendom, constraineth me to send this messenger unto you, by whom at large your Grace may understand who great and puissant an

Army

Army all the Kings and Potentates of the East (enemies of our Faith) have lately raised, by the perswasion of Armato king of Turky, therewith to over-run not only the Empire of Greece, but all the Land of Christendom, and wholly to extinguish our Faith and holy Law. And for that all those of whom you hold the place, have always bin the true Defenders of the Christian Faith, as also that the case toucheth you so nèer, I am of this advise (my lord) that you ought to spare neither mony nor men, but to assemble your Forces in all haste, and prepare your Vessels to aid and succor the good Prince, who is the Frontier (as you know) both unto you, and all the Potentates that hold the Law of Christ. I write the like unto the King my Father, and to most part of all the Christian Lords, to whom I send Gannalin. And for that Enil hath in charge to certifie your Grace by word of mouth, what it shall please you to demand: I will not trouble you with many lines, beseeching you to give credit unto him, as to my self. The like he wrote to the King of Sardaigne: which two Messages Enil had in charge, to whom he gave ample Instructions and Remembrances of the Advertisements and secret Intelligences he had received from the Turkish Coast: not onely of the number of men both on horse and foot, but also of the multitude of their Vessels and other warlike Instruments: commanding Gandalin to go with him till he came unto Cicilia, where he should provide shipping to sayl into Great Brittain to Amadis his father, and from thence to France unto king Perion, then to Sobradise to Galaor, likewise to king Bruneau, to Quedragant, Dragonis, and Gosquilant: to whom he sent several Letters. Gandalin carrying them likewise the same Instructions that Enil had unto the Emperor, commanding them expressly to assure them all, that he would not depart from the Castle of the defended mountain, before their arrival there, but meant to kèep while breath was in his body.

Gandalin and Enil had so good and prosperous a weather, that in less than fifteen days after their departure, they passed the Countrey of Messine, and landed at Saragource, where Gandalin hired a Brigandine to execute his charge. And to the end you may understand what effect their Messages did work, I will leave

leabe Gandalin trabersing the Mediteranean Sea, and entring into the Ocean, and speak of Enil that arribed at Ostre, where as then he found the Emperor accompanied with King Floreſtan, debiſing onely of hawks and hounds: but when they eſpied Enil, preſuming he brought ſome ill newes, they asked him where he left Eſplandian? Enil knowing how to behabe himſelf, kiſſed the Letters, and gabe one to the Emperor, the other to the king of Sardaigne: which habing read, and perceibing them to be of credit, took him apart, where he diſcobered unto them all you heard before. With that the Emperor leabing Enil with King Floreſtan, went unto the Gentlemen and Knights that then were preſent, and ſaid unto them: My friends, we muſt all to the Wars: my Nephew Eſplandian hath adbertiſed me (by this Gentleman expreſly ſent unto me) that the king of Turky and all his Allies are in arms, and habe raiſed a mighty Army to aſſail my brother the Emperor of Conſtantinople: but I bow to God (if he gibe me life and help) that before the moneth of September next enſuing, I will be there with ſuch a Force, that I will make him twice repent how he ſo raſhly doth aſſail, and learn him to defend himſelf. Wherefore let every man be ready, for I will go my ſelf in perſon: And calling king Floreſtan, he asked him if he would go with him? My Lord (ſaid he) to morrow I will ſend to all my Ports and Habens, that all the Ships of War that can be found may be in a readineſs: mean time I will in all parts aſſemble men to do as my Nephew Eſplandian hath required. My Lord (ſaid Enil) my Lord Eſplandian hath written by Gandalin to king Amadis, and other of his friends, whom he hath deſired to joyn with you, ſo that I hope about one time all your Armies will be ready, and that without long staying for each other, you will aſſemble all together. Truly (ſaid king Floreſtan) it was well debiſed. With that divers captains were diſpatched into ſundry places to gibe order for their men, and to ballaſt, rigge, and prepare Veſſels for their Voyage into the Eaſt. Gandalin on the other ſide coaſting the Iſles of Majorque and Minorque, leabing Guinea and Barbarie, paſſed the ſtraits of Gibraltar, and had ſo good a wind, that in few days without staying in Spain, he arribed in Great Brittain with king

Amadis,

Amadis, who as then continued in London, and presented him with the Letter that Elpandian sent, shewing him likewise his charge by word of mouth, the good and evil adventures that he had since he departed from Mirefleur, and among the rest the overthrow of the Turkish army on the Sea, the taking of King Amato, the occasion why the siege rose up before the Castle of the defended mountain, the arrival of Gastilles, the taking of Alfarin, and of the captain of Telisant, the surprising of Galatia, the loss of Urganda: and lastly, all what you have read at large in the chapters going before. And to the end my lord (said he) that order may be had to prevent the inconvenience he foreseeth to be prepared against all Christendom (if it be not succeed) he hath expressly willed me to shew you, that he hath had certain intelligence, that all the Kings of the East parts have sworn and promised together to over-run all Christendom: which is very likely, considering the great preparations & assembly of men they have already made in the Isle of Tenedos: which is such, that as our spies report, they are at least six hundred sail of Ships, and about four or five hundred thousand men. God will help us if it pleased him, said the King Amadis, for my part, I will do what possible I may, and will likewise advertise King Perion my father, and my brother Galaor. My Lord (said Gandalin) I have also charge to travel unto them, and likewise unto Gasquillan, Don Brunean, Quedragant, and others, to whom Elpandian hath written in like sort as he hath done to you, and hath expressly given me in charge to see King Luisart, and do his humble commendations unto him. It is great reason (said the king:) nevertheless I am of this opinion, that before my mother the Queen you do not once declare the occasion of your coming, but give her to understand that all is well, but not unto the king, if you find him alone: for he is a man (as every one well knoweth) to take all things with patience as they shall fall out: and because my Sons affairs require no delay, I pray you Gandalin after you have refreshed your self a day or two, go on your journey as you have in charge. So Gandalin that day remained there, during which time Queen Oriane talked long with him: the next day he departed to see King Luisart and Queen Brisenne

at

at Mirefleur, who knowing he came of meſſage from Eſplandian were exceeding glad: the Queen, although ſhe were wiſe and very aged, yet could not change her womans nature, but before the king ſpake any word asked him for her ſon: but Gandalin (accuſtomed readily to deviſe excuſes, as he had been inſtructed by King Amadis) told her that he had left him in the firm Iſle not well at eaſe by reaſon of his long travel, but not ſo ill (ſaid he) as that he could not have taken pain to come hither and ſee you, but he feared leſt his ſickneſs would encreaſe: where he thought it better for him to keep his chamber a while, than to entertain a long and enbious ague for a long ſpace: which the Queen eaſily beliebed: and for the hope ſhe had ſhortly to ſee him, ſhe made no account thereof: nebertheleſs, the ſame ebening Gandalin told King Luiſart all that you heard before, wiſely excuſing himſelf of the ſpeech he uſed before him unto the Queen, as King Amadis had given him charge: wherein king Luiſart commended him, & for the reſt he promiſed to think thereon while he travelled unto thoſe with whom he had to do. In this ſort Gandalin being diſpatched, returned to king Amadis, who in ỹ mean time (perſwaded by Queen Oriane) wrought a marriage for him, as you ſhall hear. You have read in the beginning of our hiſtory of the ſervices the gentlewoman of Denmark did for them, and the things wherein ſhe & Gandalin had been exerciſed: wherefore it was reaſon, that having been partakers of their youthful toys, ſhe ſhould alſo taſte ſome of their proſperous fortunes. Wherefore Queen Oriane moved king Amadis to make a marriage between them two, but he thought the match unfit, becauſe the gentlewoman was already aged, & Gandalin being young & luſty: nebertheleſs,) as all women that are wiſe and of a quick conceit, can bring their enterpriſes to effect, the Queen found means to get the kings conſent: wherby Gandalin was no ſooner come from Mireſleur, but he took him aſide, & ſaid unto him: Gandalin, the queen is deſirous to have you ſtay with us, not only for the love ſhe knoweth I bear unto you, but alſo for the good ſhe wiſheth you. And for this cauſe ſhe would have you marry with the gentlewoman of Denmark, whom ſhe loveth, and will do much both for her and you, if you conſent thereto: you know her long time ſince both to be wiſe, good, & vertuous, and for my part I pray you and counſel

you thereunto. Gandalin would gladly have excused himself, and to say the truth, he was too yong for so old a match: nevertheless having from his infancy learned to confirm his will to that of Amadis, he was content to do as pleased him: in such sort, that in less than three days after the marriage was celebrated and ended. Mean time king Amadis took the letters and instructions that Gandalin should carry to Gasquillan and king Brunean, and sent them by a gentleman of his named Handro, cousin german to the Countess of Flanders, desiring them as much as possible they might, to aid his son in his so good a cause: but the next week following, Gandalin more affected to the service of Esplandian than to court his wife, departed from thence to travel into France unto king Perion, and from him to Sobradise to Galaor. Mean time king Amadis sent for all the Pilots, masters, and marriners of his country that he could find, commending King Arban of Norgales, to take care for all things requisite for the enterprise and charges of such a voyage, both for men and vessels. In this manner did the affairs touching these wars proceed through the greatest part of Europe while al ỹ kings in the East by little & little assembled themselves together, as you shall hear.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How the great City of *Constantinople* was besieged by the Princes of the East, and of the sallies that were made by those of the City to keep them from the same.

The army of the Pagan Kings daily assembling in the Isle of Tenedos, the Emperor mean time fortified his city of Constantinople both with men and victuals in the best manner he could, commanding those that had charge of his army by Sea to cause all his vessels to come into the Haven of the Town, which he caused to be barred with a chain, that on that side he might be out of danger. Then he sent divers brigandines unto Natolia, to discover the Pagans army, and bring him certain news: Mean time, the country people reaped all their corn, and brought it to the City. Within eight days after the Brigandines that were sent forth, discovered in the straights of Hellespont the great Fleet of the Turks that lay at Abidos,

where

where they stayed a certain time to take in victuals and other munitions necessary for their ships. Whereof the Emperor being advertised, caused his men to muster, giving Frandalo charge of the Dragon-gate, so called, because that at the foundation of the city, when it was named Brisance, there was found a marbellous Dragon under the foundation of the gate, which Dragon was bound, chained, and nourished so long time, that it was thought most strange. Norandel had charge of the Gate called Equiline, and Gastilles his nephew of that called The Well, so named of a great and profound well that stood hard by it. And causing the other gates to be rampired up, provided for all things as a wise and valiant captain should do in such a case. With that a Grecian that had bin taken by the Turks, came into the City, and assured them for certain that the Souldan of Liquie was himself in person with king Armato, and almost all the Kings of the east, having two hundred Gallies, as well great as small, fifty great ships, thirty mahomes, and one and twenty caracds, that are ships not much unlike to gallies: besides thirty foistes and divers brigandines, barques, galions and skiffs, wherein they had laid their victuals and other munitions: and for their number of footmen, they might be about some three hundred and fifty thousand men: saying likewise, that Alphorax had the chief charge at Sea, and Armato on land, and that their determination was never to depart from Constantinople, till they had destroyed it, and from thence would go to Rome, and further if they could. The first day after, this great Army (passing the gulf of Propontide) came into the straights of Constantinople, entring in the great sea, where they remained during the siege, robbing al the country about, where first they stayed a week before they landed any of their men: mean time, certain gallies and small ships set forward to make an alarum in the haven, from whence (to their great loss) they were repulsed, for that six of the principallest of them were sunk in the Sea. Nevertheless, the next day following they began to land, and in great numbers thought to win the gate: there were many brave blows both with Sword and Spear given on both parts, and many a valiant man ended their days, and became meat to

fishes. There the Knights of Great Brittain shewed themselves not to be unacquainted with such dangers, and who so had beheld Norandel, Frandalo, Manley, and Talanque repulse the enemy, that thought to advance themselves, might easily judge with what desire they fought. But what should I stand longer to describe this conflict? To conclude, the gate was defended, and the enemies repulsed from the same, yet their number was so great, that notwithstanding the valor of the Emperors men they landed and lay within two bows shot of the City, they of the City being forced to retire. The Pagans being on land, dibided themselves into four parts, in such sort, that the City was so well besieged, that not a man could enter or come forth without their leabe. Wherefore King Armato presently caused great number of ladders to be prepared, the most part of them double, hoping before the work were ended, to assault, take, spoil, and destroy the City. But they within slept neither night nor day, but made artificial fires, with all other things requisite for such a charge. The Pagans staped not long to execute their purpose, so that upon a munday in the morning, they came in great fury to set fire on the gates, and to scale the Town, although for that time they lost their labors, and many of them their lives, where in the end they were constrained to retire to their no little shame and great confusion. And in their retreat, Norandel with four or five hundred men issued at a postern-gate, and set upon them behind, which put them in such fear, that they drabe them to their tents. Yet not being content with this first repulse, they determined on Friday after either to die, or enter into the town. And the day appointed, ran unto the walls, where the number of the assailants was so great, and the assault giben in so many places both by sea and land, that if God had not probided for them, it is most certain the town had been taken: especially on Frandalos side, for the most part of his men fled away from their guard: whereby it happened, that more then a hundred Turks mounted on the walls, but they staped not long, for that the Emperor (who during the assault staped in the midst of the City with the rest of all his power to aid such places as had most need) advertised thereof, marched to Frandalos quarter,

and

and with such force repulsed the enemy, that he made them glad to get them thence, in such sort, that they received no less loss at the second assault, then at the first. It is true, that ten of the Knights of Great Brittain were slain at the conflict, which much grieved their companions, especially for the loss of Ledarin, of Telarque, of Trys, and Imosil of Burgundy. This second assault having had such issue as you heard before, Armato went to counsel with al the other kings and princes to know what they should do, where it was concluded to kéep their tents, and so inclose the town: for to get it by assault, they knew full well they should but lose their labors, wherefore they meant no more to try the same: but many times made skirmishes with that City to their no little loss. Thus they passed above a month without doing any thing worthy the rehearsing, till one day among the rest, a gentlewoman belonging to the Souldan of Liquy came on message to the gate that Norandel had in charge, of whom she asked if the Knight of the great Serpent were among them. Wherefore? said Norandel. I bring him (said she) a letter from the chief and most courteous knight in all Asia. Norandel desirous to understand the contents of the letter, said he was the man. Then look upon it (said she) at your leisure: And if you think it good return an answer: with that she turned her horse, and rid the same way that she came. Which done, Norandel opened the letter, the contents whereof are these.

RODRIGUE Great Souldan of *Liquie*, Friend to the gods, and Enemy to their Enemies, Defender of the Pagan Law; To thee that callest thy self *Knight of the Great Serpent*, greeting: Know thou that the cause of our long Voyage by Sea to enter into these Countries, hath been in hope to be revenged of the Outrages that my Uncle *Armato* King of *Turky* hath received at the hands of thee and thy companions, not having once offended thee: and although we are most sure of the destruction of the wicked Emperor that favoureth thee in thy so wicked and damnable enterprizes, and that before long time be past, both he and his shall end their lives by our hands, yet should I be much grieved, that this misfortune should happen unto thee before I have proved my body against thine, because of the renown that

is ſpread of thee throughout the world. Wherefore chuſe whether thou wilt accept of the Combate between us two alone, of ten to ten, a hundred to a hundred, or of greater number as thou thinkeſt good. Swearing unto thee by all our gods, that thoſe thou ſhalt bring with thee for that cauſe, ſhall receive no more diſpleaſure than thy ſelf, unleſs it be by ſuch as are ordained to fight with them, according to the Agreement we ſhall make. Wherefore make me an anſwer worthy ſuch a Knight, that thereby thy honor be not ſtained.

Norandel having read this Letter, ſhewed it to his friends, who were all of advice to grant the Souldan his requeſt. But Norandel would determine nothing before he made the Emperor acquainted, under whoſe conduct during the ſiege, he had ſubmitted himſelf: whereupon he went to ſpeak with him, and having ſhewed him the Contents of the Letter he had received in Eſplandians name, and the counſel of his companions, the Emperor asked him what he thought therein. My Lord (ſaid he) if it pleaſeth you that I, and nine others which I will chuſe, ſhall undertake this combate, you ſhall do us much favor. My good friend (ſaid the Emperor) you ſée the eſtate wherein I am, and the time wherein I ought to kéep, not onely you and others wherein I put my whole affiance, but the meaneſt ſouldier in this City. Nevertheleſs, I wil ſo much agrée unto your will, that if you and your companions think it good, I am content you do it. My Lord (ſaid Norandel) both I and they moſt humbly crave it of your Grace. Well then (ſaid the Emperor) if it pleaſeth God, you ſhall win honor thereby, as you have done before in many as perilous adventures as this is. Norandel thanked the Emperor, and the ſame day cauſed his Knights of Great Brittain to be aſſembled together, by whoſe advice there was an Anſwer framed to the Souldans Letter, the contents whereof do follow.

THe Knights that are ſervants to Jeſus Chriſt, being at this time with the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, for the defence and augmentation of the Chriſtians name, to thee *Rodrigue Souldan* of *Liquy*, like greeting thou haſt ſent unto the Knight of the great Serpent: A Gentlewoman that ſaith ſhe belongeth unto thee, that hath given us a Letter directed unto him, the contents

tents whereof are in two points. In the first, thou complainest of the enterprises he hath made against thine uncle King *Armato*: in the other thou shewest a desire thou hast to prove thy person against his, or a greater number against a greater, as he shall think it good. But for that the Knight thou writest unto at this present is not here, nor in place whereas he can return thee answer, we thought it convenient in his behalf to satisfie thy request, and to accept the offers thou hast made unto him: assuring thee, that here is the son of a King, and nine other Knights with him that will fight with thee and as many more of thine, if thou be content therewith: Advise thy self then herein, and having received thy answer, with safe conduct safely to go and come, we will not fail to be in the place where you shall appoint.

This Letter sealed up, Norandel gabe it to one of bis squires to bear it to the Souldan, who made bim answer that be desired onely to proobe bis body against the Knight of the great Serpent and no other. But (said be) if those that sent you bither babe any desire to fight against ten of my Knights, they shall finde them ready, being as great gentlemen and of as bigb a linage as they are. And as touching their safe conduct, I will so well prouide for it, that they shall habe occasion to think well of me: wherefore return thou unto them, and let me know their answer. With that the Squire having his dispatch, went and came so often between them, that in the end the combate of ten to ten was fully agreed upon, and the Lists appointed hard before the Town: whither the next morning the ten Knights went, whose names were as followeth. Norandel, Garvate of the dreadful Dale, Talanque, Manley, Ambor de Galdel, Elian le Delibere, Bravor son of Balan, Trion cousin german to Queen Briolany, Imosil de Burgoigne, and Lisloran of the silver bridge.

CHAP. XLIX.

How the ten Christian Knights entred into the Lists, and of the Combate between them and ten Pagan knights that belonged to the Souldan of *Liquie*.

ALl that night the ten Knights watched in the principallest Church of Constantinople, confessing themselves, and praying

ing unto God as if they should presently die: The next day as the Sun began to appear, the Emperor accompanied of divers Noblemen, the Empress, the Princess Leonorine, Queen Minoresse, with divers other Ladies and Gentlewomen, came unto them, where they heard Masse devoutly; that done, they returned unto the Pallace, where Norandel and his nine companions armed themselves, the Ladies serving them for squires, in such sort, as Norandel received such favor at Queen Minoresses hands, that she found means to help to buckle on every piece of his Armor one after the other. As she was busie about him, he found means to say unto her: Madam, the honor that you do me, maketh me so couragious, that this day I hope to make it known to those that shall behold us fight, how much my strength is now increased by your means. But if it pleaseth you to bestow some favor upon me, that I might bear the same about my Armor, I should account my self for one of the most happy Knights living on the earth. My good friend (said she) the most precious Jewel that I can give unto you, is my heart, that shall accompany yours, to the end that being united together, they may the better preserve both your life and mine. And taking a Bracelet of Gold, that from her infancy she had always kept, she tied it about his right arm. And this circle (said she) being round as you behold it, shall without ceasing be witness of our loves, serving as a Rampart to this Army: which (if it pleaseth God) in defending, it shall so well defend his master, that he shall return in as good health as I desire he should. Norandel thanked her most heartily: mean time Leonorine entertained Talanque, Manley, and the rest, to whom she said: My friends, I hope the Lord will shew you so much grace, that the Victory shall be yours, for the Combate you take in hand is not for to defend the honor of a Gentlewoman, but the glorious Faith of Christ. If therefore it be so, the strength proceedeth from him, be you then well assured, that he will impart so much to you as you shall want. Madam (said Talanque) at other times we have been at the like feast, from whence we have returned to the great expence of those that called us thither: as (if it be Gods will) we hope this day to do the like. Wherewith taking

their

their leaues of her, they went to finde their horses, and being mounted, the Emperor with great number of Knights and Gentlewomen brought them to the gate: And committing them to God, the ten Knights marched brauely to the place of Combat, where the Souldan with a great number of his friends met them, asking them whom the Emperor had appointed Iudge on their side. Souldan (said Norandel) we desire no other Iudge then your self, that are accounted a courteous and most faithful Prince. By all my gods (said he) I had rather die a thousand deaths, then you should endure the least injury in the world: we beliebe it well (said all the knights.) With that he causeo them to enter into the Lists at one end, and the ten Pagans at the other: but before they entred into fight, he called Norandel and his companions, and said unto them: My friends, I pray you let me shew you what the custom of my Countrey is in such affairs: then if you think good, you may obserue it; if not, my knights shall keep your custom if it be indifferent. Shew us then (said Norandel) what it is, and if the same be reasonable, we will not refuse it. You shall understand (said he) that all knights iustle one against one, to the end that all men may know the excellency of the Victor: And if any one be ouerthrown, he that is on the horseback shall not assail the other before their companions haue run out their course: Then he that is on horseback shall alight, and shall fight it out by dint of sword with him that before was ouerthrown. Because it chanceth oftentimes, that the best knights that are, fall into such inconuenience, onely by the fault and means of bad horses, which cause them diuers times either to fail in striking of their enemy, or else not to run their right course: which cannot be excused in those that are on foot, to whom it is permitted to succor each other if need require. Truly (said Norandel) that custom is well ordained, and I and my companions wil obserue the same: wherewith the Souldan went out of the Lists, causing his Heralds to proclaim the fight: With that a Pagan stepped forth against Norandel, that refused him not: but couering himself with his shield, they met so fiercely, that their spears were broken to their fists, meeting body to body with so great strength, that the

Pagan fell ober his hoꝛſe tail, lying flat upon the ground : but Noꝛandel had no hurt, onely that his hoꝛſes ſhoulder was thruſt out of joint, ſo that he lighted off, ſtaying till the reſt had run their courſes, as he had pꝛomiſed. Then Garvate du Val Crain-tif ran againſt one of the other, and they charged each other in ſuch ſoꝛt, that their feet failing in their ſtirrops, they were both caſt out of their ſaddles. Then Talanque ran againſt the third Pagan, to whom foꝛtune was moꝛe fabouꝛable then to any of the reſt: foꝛ they ran ſo well, that neither of them once ſtarted aſide, oꝛ moued in their ſaddles, and yet bꝛake their ſpears in many pieces. The like chanced to Manley and Ambor, but not to Bravor the ſon of Balan, foꝛ he hit him that ran againſt him right in the bꝛeaſt, and thꝛew him from his hoꝛſe. And pꝛeſently therewith Imoſil of Burgundy had ſo great a ſtroke with a launce that his eyes ſtarted in his head, and was therewith ſo much aſtoniſhed, that his hoꝛſe bare him to the ſide of the barriers, where he fell down flat. Elian le delibere, and he that ran againſt him, were conſtrained to hold by their hoꝛſes mains. Liſtoran of the bꝛidge miſſed his ſtroke, and his enemy likewiſe: the like happened to Trion, and the laſt that ran with him. That done, all they that were on hoꝛſeback, lighted down to fight with ſwoꝛds, and there began betweẽn them ſuch a fight as the like had not beẽn ſeẽn of ſo few Knights together, maintaining themſelves ſo bꝛabely one againſt the other, that the ſtrongeſt of them was ſo weary and out of bꝛeath, that they were conſtrained to reſt. And as Norandel leaned upon his Swoꝛd which he reſted on the ground, the bꝛacelet that Minoreſſe gave him fell downward upon his arm, which put him in ſo good remembꝛance of her, that clean foꝛgetting all the trabel he had taken befoꝛe, he ſpake ſo loud that every man might hear, and ſaid: By God, ſir Knight, this reſt doth not beſeem us: many men will from hencefoꝛth be in doubt of the great gloꝛy that now we mean to win. Wheꝛefoꝛe let every man ſhew foꝛth what we can do, and let no man ſpare. Wherewith taking the little piece of his ſhield that reſted in his hand, and lifting up his arm, he gave ſo great a blow unto his enemy, that he made him reel therewith: and doubling it ſtrake him ſo ſurely on the helmet, that with the blow the

Turb

Turk was forced to kneel down, and let his sword fall out of his hand: which Norandel seized upon being ready to strike off his head, if he had not cried him mercy: which Talanque and Manley perceiving, imployed their forces in such manner, that it might easily be judged they would soon obtain the victory. As for Bravor he had already stricken his knight down, wherefore he ran to help the rest, and Norandel likewise. With the which help it soon appeared, that they which rested yet to overcome would not long resist: for in short space they found themselves in such extremity, that unless the Souldan of Liquie had desired the Christian Knights to stay a while, they had all died: but calling Norandel unto him, he said: I pray you (said he) proceed no further in this combate, and content your selves that I account my knights for banquished, as in truth they are, and so hardly handled, that the force you shall from henceforth use against them, shall more be holden for a kinde of cruelty than any chivalry. Nevertheless if my request may take no place with you, do as you think good. Souldan (said Norandel) if they acknowledge it at our hands and ask us mercy, they shall not fail to have it: for it was never our custom to use force to such as could not stand against us. Content your selves (said he) that I that am their Lord yield you the victory, and I pray you therefore shew mercy unto them, swearing unto you by my crown (if you do them so much good) that while I live, I will not be unmindful of the same. With that the ten Christian Knights went out of the field, and mounted on their horses, took their way unto the City, where the Emperor stayed for them, for he had seen the issue of the combate, and now they returned victors: but he heard not what words had past between them, till they being lighted off their horses, told him what was done, for the which he praised God, esteeming more of them for their courtesie they had shewen unto the enemy.

CHAP. L.

How Queen *Calafre* came to aid the Pagans, and of the marvelous assault that she gave to the City of *Constantinople*.

The renown of this War undertaken by the Kings, Taborlans, Souldans, Califfes, and Princes dwelling in

Tartaria, India, Arabia and other countries in the East, against the Emperor and his Empire of Constantinople, was spread so far abroad, that it was known to the puisant Queen Calafre reigning in Califorine, a most fertile and pleasant country confining on the head of the river Borisleneis, hard by the foot of the Riffee mountains. This country whereof I speak, was sometimes peopled with good Knights and men of all quarters, but the women upon malice devised a means to kill them all, establishing a law among themselves, that from that time forwards they would acknowledge for Lady and Queen one of their own country no men, governing themselves as the Amazons used to do. Whereby it was not lawful for any of them to use the company of men above once or twice a year, upon the days and times by them appointed, when they went of their own country and used their neighbors help, with whom God knoweth if they found not means to make them pay the usury of the time lost, in such sort, that most of them returned home with childe: but the bringing up of their children was far different, for the maiden children were kept alive, burning their right paps, but not the men children, for as soon as they were born they put them to death, having agreed not to suffer one alive, or else so few, that they very easily might overcome them. For this cause oftentimes they warred against the Tartarians bordering on their country, putting them to great trouble by divers and continual invasions, as well by sea as by land. In their laws and customes they observed so great rigour, as that if any man (by casualty or otherwise) fell into their hands, he proved for food unto a great number of grissons, nourished among them when they were young, being so tame and gentle, that never any hauk knew better the Faulkoners lure, than these gentle birds knew the voice of her that ordinarily fed them. To come unto the point, this queen of Califorine being a woman of great spirit, baliant, hardy, strong, fair, and of good behaviour, hearing of the wars undertaken against the Christians, was desirous to be there, not for any ill she wished them, but onely for to know them, and to see their country that bare so great renown. And for that cause she assembled great numbers of the principal Ladies of her country,

shewing

ſhewing them what honor they might obtain in that voyage: which may peradventure be ſuch (ſaid ſhe) that by our force and great prowes we may greatly augment our Empire, being feared and redoubted of each man, and not continue always buried among theſe mountains, as they in times paſt did, of whom at this preſent we now poſſeſs and injoy the place. The Queen in this ſort could ſo well perſwade them, that they moved with a marvellous deſire to go with her, preſently prepared their ſhips, and ſet ſail for Thracia, with ſo good and proſperous a winde, that the tenth day after the aſſaults of Conſtantinople, they arrived in the army of Armato, where they were honorably received: and after divers ſpeeches uſed by the Souldan of Liquy, and other Princes of the camp unto the Queen of Califorine, ſpecially touching their determination concerning that great enterpriſe, ſhe being ſorry they had done ſo little againſt the town, deſired them that ſhe might once have leave to try her fortune againſt it, by means that ſhe would uſe. And the better to induce them thereunto, ſhe told them ſhe had fifty Griffons that would not fail (being let out of their cages) to ſeize upon the Chriſtians without hurting of her women, becauſe they knew them and had been nouriſhed with them. And while they take their flight (ſaid ſhe) I will give ſuch an aſſault againſt the town, that without doubt we will inforce the ſame: for if the Emperors ſouldiers appear but to defend the walls, my Griffons ſhall be ready to carry them clean away, as the Merlin doth the Lark. But to the end (ſaid ſhe) your men receive no hurt, let them abide within their tents till they be ſhut into their cages. When King Armato and the Souldan of Liquie heard the great zeal and affection ſhe ſhewed to imploy her forces, as alſo the invention that ſhe had, they all agreed that the next day after ſhe ſhould do what liked her. Whereupon ſhe ſent preſently to her that kept the Griffons, that ſhe ſhould give them nothing for to eat of all y day, y when they meant to uſe them at the aſſault, they might gredier; and further ſent word by ſound of drum, that all her companies ſhould be ready the next day early in the morning, to give aſſault unto the City. Queen Calafre having in this manner provided for her enterpriſe, at the time appointed all her wo-

men

men armed according to their manner (the most part of them bearing bows) ran with great fury unto the walls, and with their ladders began to mount up: with that the alarm went about the city, all men running to defend the same: and as they were some upon the walls and other places of defence, the Queen made sign to let the Griffons loose, which being hungry and flying ober the town, seized upon such as they could find abroad: wherewith the Emperors souldiers were in so great fear, that most part of them that fought, forsook the walls to bide themselves. Alas what pity was it to see Soldiers, citizens, knights, and others, yea women and little children, and all whatsoever they could get into their claws taken up into the air, and sometimes having taken them up, they let them fall upon the stones, whereby they had a strange and cruel death: surely if God had not kept the City better than those that had the charge, it is most sure it had been taken at that time. But there happened a strange case, for as the Griffons held their prey, and that the Knights of great Brittain with some small number of others, resisted the assault made by the women, the Turks (that had been advertised not to come out of their tents while they assailed the town) moved with too greedy a desire to sack the City which they thought surely had been taken, ran unto the assault making such a noise, that the Griffons (feeding on their preys) left the bodies they had seized upon, and flying up again, seized on them that they saw come running to the town, whereof in short space after they made so great a butchery, that more than four hundred Turks were presently slain by them: mean time those within the town perceiving that good fortune, did so fiercely repulse the Californiens, that their principal women lay dead within the ditches: wherewith the Queen was forced to retire, knowing her enterprise would not take effect as she desired it should, not by reason of her souldiers, but in that they kept not in as they had promised. Wherewith she commanded to take the birds again, but the Falconers could not by any means make them to come in, before they had slain and devoured above a thousand Turks and others, whereof they onely suckt the blood. Wherewith King Armato and the Souldan of Liquie

were

were so griebed, that from thencefoꝛth they began to sheꝛw so hard a countenance to the Queen, that she was in the minde to return into her country, not offering from that time once to give stroke with swoꝛd to their advantage. Yet not long after she was appeased, and fought with King Amadis, as it shall be shewed you at large in the end of this our fifth Book. And that we may habe the better means to attain thereto, we will now return again unto the Christian Princes, that assembled their powers and foꝛces to help the Emperoꝛ, imbarquing themselbes, as presently you shall bear. But befoꝛe they arribed at Constantinople, many good Knights both of Great Brittain and others were slain within the City, not onely in the assaults made against it by the Pagans, but at the last assault made by the Queen Calafre, among the which, none were so much lamented as Ledarin de Faiarque, Trys, Imosil of Burgundy, and the two sons of the Giant Balan.

CHAP. LI.

How the Christian Princes as well of the East as West parts, assembled their Forces to aid the Emperor of *Constantinople*; and of their navigation.

IF you habe read the discourse of this our Historꝛy, it hath been shewed you beforꝛe, how Enil went unto the Emperoꝛ of Rome, and Floreſtan King of Sardaigne, and what became of Gandalin after he had passed the Straights of Gibraltar, and entred in the Ocean Sea, eben to Great Brittain and other places, where he found King Amadis and others, to whom he had charge to go: Now we must declare the rest. You shall therefoꝛe underſtand, that Gandalin having sojourned eight days in London, moꝛe by the commandment of king Amadis and Queen Oriane, than foꝛ the pleasure that he took in the woman they had caused him to marry, knowing the affairs wherein he had left his companions, departed from thence, and trabelled so long, that he arribed

in

in France, and went unto King Perion to whom he gave the letter that his son and grand-child sent unto him: and withal declared the state of the East countries, as they then were, with the inconvenience that might fall unto all Christendom, if the Empire of Constantinople were in obedience to the infidels. So well could Gandalin tell his tale, that the good old King Perion moved with a holy zeal, determined to go himself in person, and to take with him great quantity of ships and men, furnished for the wars. Gandalin stayed not long with them, but while he prepared himself, he went into Scotland, Norway, Sobradise, Denmark and Sweathland, and did his Embassages so well, that all the Kings and Princes to whom he went, determined with all speed to aid Esplandian, in such sort, that in short time after their ships were ready, and those of Sweathland, Norway, and Denmark, come unto the port of Suer, from whence setting sail, they coasted along Freseland, Holland, and Braband, till they arrived at Bulloigne, where King Perion had prepared great number of Ships, Hulkes, and other vessels: which being furnished with men, victuals, and munition necessary for the wars, hoised sail and put to sea. And coasting Normandy, came to little Brittaigne where they ankered in S. Mathews Haven, where the Kings, Luisart and Amadis accompanied of Grumedan and divers other Knights, were arrived to refresh themselves: having passed the Isle of Sorlingue, the Irish men imbarqued themselves at the cape Antiquan, and the Scots at cape Balso. And having sailed the way that the Brittons had past, joyned with the Western Princes that went that voyage, in such sort, that within three days after they set sail, and having a Northeast winde, they discovered the coast of Spain, passing the Port of Finis terre in compostelle: after that the cape S. Vincent; & drawing on the left side, they passed the straights of Gibraltar, & leaving Barbary and Guinde on the right hand, sailed toward Tamar, Austora, and Lagarde, minding to leave Majorque & Minorque, to enter into the straights of Busina and Monaco, and from thence to sail to the ports of Elese and Corse, where they met with Floreslan King of Sardaigne and his Fleet, but before they arrived there, fortune was so contrary unto them, that

cer-

certain of their Gallions could not follow the ships, but staied behind to the number of eight, being so scattered, that they made account they had bèn lost. Nevertheless, the next day they arrived all at Port S. Luce, where without longer staying they passed forward to go to Regi, where the army of the Emperor of Rome, (coming from Osty) lay at anker staying for them. Where they continued six days, not onely to take in fresh water, but also to calk and mend their ships and other vessels that had need: the seventh day having a good wind, they hoysed ankers, and setting sail, coasted along the country of Morea, coming to Cape de Malvasie, where the winde fell somewhat contrary: but in the end the sea waxing calm, put forward to Cape Calon, and the Isle of Negrepont: and entring into the Archipelago they discovered the side of the Cape Athos, till they approached Galiopi, leaving the Ile of Tenedos, because they would not be discovered by the Turks that Armato had set there to kèep a passage for his victuals to be brought unto the army: where they staied not long but they entered into the goulfe of Propontide, coasting Thrace, till they came unto the Port of Salombre, which is not above thirty miles from the City of Constantinople, where they landed, that they might the better approach the Pagans camp: with that they agrèed among them that King Childadan and Quedragant should be Generals of the army by Sea: and having left sufficient number of men for the furnishing and safe kèeping of their ships, their Flèet sailed towards Constantinople, hoping to set upon Alphorax and his army by Sea before they should perceive them. But it fell out otherwise, for the Turks that had spies in all places, discovered them, not suffering Alphorax to fight, desiring him most earnestly onely to kèep the entry of the straits, to take all means from the town to be victualled on that side. Which King Childadan and Quedragant understanding, would not hazard themselves, but ankered within half a mile of the enemy, staying for king Luisart, the Emperor of Rome, and those that marched by land, mean time giving divers skirmishes to the enemy with their Pinnaces, but Alphorax for all that would not leave his hole, lying as close as possibly he could:

on the other side Armato and his company being advertised of the great aid that came towards the town, caused their forces to assemble, determining to kéep the side of the great sea, by the which they might easilier recover victuals, as well from Natolia as out of Tartaria. The Kings Amadis, Perion, and others made such haste, that the ninth day after they incamped themselves in the sight of Constantinople right before their enemies, in a place that séemed most convenient. But if the Pagans at the first were much abashed to sée those succors, the Emperor and those within the town were not much less, doubting it had bén some new forces come against the town: for they had not any intelligence of the sending of Gandalin and Enil to the Christian princes, that brought with them a multitude both of ships and men, as well Knights as others. Now to return to the Christians Fléet: King Childadan knowing that Alphorax played the for, desired Quedragant (having equal power with him) to be content that he with threescore Pinnaces might skirmish with him, that thereby if it were possible, he might provoke him to come out, which he agréed unto: wherefore setting sail, he made towards his enemy, so neer, that they were ready to fight hand to hand: nevertheless Alphorax for that time would not touch the bait, but entred farther in the straights: wherewith King Childadan retired, and came unto the haven of the City, making the bravest show that might be séen: those of Constantinople perceiving the Handirols and Streamers of Great Britain, and of other Christian Princes, made him answer with the like, and so high, that the noise of the Trumpets, Cterons, and Tabers was so great, that Armato and all the Pagans might easily hear it. With that King Childadan was received by the Emperor, Norandel, and others, to whom he shewed what aid was come unto them, and what princes had taken the voyage in hand. In good faith (said the Emperor) they bind me for ever unto them, yet am I much abashed how they understood of the wars between Armato and me. What? my Lord (said Childadan) did Esplandian never tell you thereof? No I assure you (said the Emperor) nor any of his companions, as far as I know. Is he not in the City (said the King?)

King:) In good truth (said Norandel) he would not leave the castle of the defended mountain, minding to keep it, if the Pagans came to besiege it. Assure your selves (said Childadan) he will not long stay there before King Amadis sendeth for him: for we determine presently to give battel, and if he should fail at such a journey, it would grieve him ever after. Much other talk had the Knights o Constantinople with Childadan and those that bare him company, where he stayed till the next day in the morning, that he entered into his ships to return unto Quedragant.

CHAP. LII.

How *Esplandian* and the king of *Denmark* were sent for by *Gandalin* that went unto the Castle *the defended mountain*, where they stayed, attending the succors of the Christian Princes, and of a Letter that the Souldan of *Liquie* and Queen *Calafre* wrote unto King *Amadis* and *Esplandian*.

KIng Childadan returned to Quedragant as you heard before, and the army on land incamped in sight of the enemy, Amadis was advertised by those that had bin in the City of Constantinople, that Esplandian and the King of Denmark were at the Castle of the defended mountain, whereupon he sent Gandalin to fetch them, Gandalin took shipping, and had so good a winde, that without any adventure he arrived there, where he declared unto them how King Amadis and almost all the Christian Princes were incamped within half a mile of the Pagans host, and al what he and Enil had done concerning their charge. And because (said Gandalin) that our men are determined shortly to give them battel, they pray you to come unto them. Truly (said Esplandian) Gandalin my friend, you have wrought the matter well, and I thank you for the pains that you have taken. My Lord (said the King of Denmark) are you not determined that we go unto them? For my part, I had rather lose one of mine arms, then fail thereof. Brother (said Esplandian) to morrow if it pleaseth God, the great serpent shall bring us thither: before that time it had always used to sail of it self, but

as then it failed. For when they were entered into it, it stirred not, whereat Gandalin much abashed, could not refrain to say: By god, this vessel is like to the horse with the white leg, that failed us when we have most need. Friend (said Esplandian) I am surely perswaded that this proceedeth by reason of Urgandas imprisonment, who at this time is in Melies power, and so well inchanted, that her art profiteth her as little as this vessel doth us that moved by her inchantments, which at this present hath no means to stir, as you may well perceive. And Esplandian said true, for at the same time the country wherein Urganda dwelt, called the unknown Island, (because it was always invisible) was as then discovered and seen of all men. With that Gandalin counselled them to enter into the Pinnace which Esplandian the King of Denmark did, and having a good wind, sailed towards Constantinople, and on a sunday in the morning they espied the vessels of king Childadan and Quedragant, which not long after they boarded, where Esplandian and the King of Denmark were received with great joy: after that he went to see his father and the rest of the Knights that were on land, and after an infinite number of imbracings and welcomes on all sides, they determined to visit their enemies somewhat nearer, whereby many brave skirmishes were made, where the women of Queen Calafre were continually in arms, and among the rest a sister of the Queens named Liote, a hardy and valiant Lady, that took a Frenchman prisoner, which certified the Souldan of Liquie that Amadis de Gaule King of Great Brittain, and Esplandian his Son were in the army. Whereof the Souldan and Queen Calafre being advertised, determined together to write unto them, the contents whereof do follow.

Rodrigue Souldan of *Liquie*, mortal enemy to the enemies of our gods, and *Calafre* Queen of *Califorine*, a country most rich and abundant in Gold and precious Stones, give you *Amadis de Gaule* King of *Great Brittain*, and your son Knight of the great Serpent, to understand, that the occasion of our arrival in these countries, hath been for these two causes. The one in hope to destroy all Christendom, and the other to prove if we may take from you the renown that is spread abroad of you, to be

the two beſt Knights living in the world for we account ourſelves for ſuch, as that if you will accept the combate of your perſons againſt ours, we will evidently make it known, that our valor is no leſs then yours. And to the end the glory of the victors may be known, the vanquiſhed ſhall remain in their powers, to diſpoſe of them as they ſhall think convenient. Adviſe yourſelves therefore to anſwer us herein by this our meſſenger, to whom we have given charge to declare unto you (if you refuſe this combate) that from henceforth we ſhall have juſt occaſion to attribute to our ſelves the advantage of the praiſes and endleſs glories that fortune heretofore hath given you, and to eſteem of you as meanly in time to come, as you have been highly renowned heretofore.

This Letter given to the Gentlewoman that bare the firſt to Norandel, ſhe went unto the Chriſtians camp, and being adverti ſed which was Amadis tent, entered therein, as he ſat talking with king Luiſart, Eſplandian, and other good knights. Where kneeling on the ground, ſhe asked which of them was the knight of the great Serpent and his father. Amadis ſpake unto her and ſaid: Gentlewoman, I am the one, and this is my Son. Is it your pleaſure to ſpeak with us? The gentlewoman caſting her eye upon Eſplandian, marvelling at his great beauty, ſpake & ſaid In good faith king Amadis, I verily believe that this is he, for I have heard him in divers places eſteemed for the ſame that now I do behold in him. Gentlewoman (ſaid Amadis) if you came into our camp onely to ſee him, you now have your deſire. That hath not bin only the cauſe (ſaid ſhe) but to bring this letter which the Souldan of Liquie and queen Calafre ſend unto you both: wherefore having read it, I pray you return an anſwer. With that (Amadis having taken it in his hand) the Gentlewoman departed out of the tent attending their reſolution. King Amadis having read it, ſhewed it to King Luiſart and the reſt that were in preſence, wherewith there a roſe great controverſie among them concerning the refuſal or acceptation of the combate, for that the moſt part of them were of adviſe it ſhould not be accepted, ſhewing divers great and evident reaſons to confirm the ſame, as the greater number of enemies they had before them ready to give them

them battel, and if it happen (said they) that fortune should be contrary to King Amadis and Esplandian (in whom partly consisteth our hope) such hard chance would breed great fear in divers men that are now very willing and ready to do the best they can. Others held the contrary, saying that it would be shame unto them all, for that refusal onely would much incourage the enemy: but they were of this opinion, that it might well be required that the number of the combatants might be greater. In good truth (said Amadis) be it of two against two, twenty against twenty, or of greater number, the victory is in the hands of God. Wherefore in refusing thereof, I should do my self wrong, and cause a great blemish to all Christendom, that would not be defaced in long time after. Besides I have great hope of Gods help herein, for whose faith and honor I have undertaken this voyage. When Esplandian heard his fathers mind, he spake boldier and said: That he would take that combate upon himself alone, not onely against the Souldan and the Queen, but against two others more with them, rather then it so should be refused: whereupon it was concluded, that Amadis and he would fight, and sending for the messenger into the tent, Amadis said unto her: Gentlewoman, you shall tell the Souldan and the Queen that I and my son are content to do as they require, wherefore let them chuse what arms they will, and for the place it shall be betwéen their camp and ours: assuring them on the faith of a King, that not one of our soldiers shall once remove how soever we spéed, which we desire likewise at their hands: and if it be their desire to have the combate fought this day, we are content to do it. With that the Gentlewoman returned, and coming to the Souldans tent, she declared her message unto them, being such as you have heard: whereof the Souldan was glad, but especially the Queen, for the great desire she had to sée Esplandian, whereof she asked the Gentlewomen what she thought of him. Madam (said she) I have in my life time seen many men and women that nature had indued with great beauty but by the gods I confess it is all but painting in regard of that I have found in him: for he is so fair and beautiful, that the more I think thereon, so much the more it maketh me con-

ceive

ceibe ſuch beauty to be rather dibine them bumane. That is much(ſaid the Queen.)I know not(ſaid the Gentlewoman)what you mean by that woꝛd Much, but I am well aſſured, if you had ſeen him as I did, that you would ſay as much as I do, and it may be moꝛe. Truly (ſaid the Queen)beſoꝛe I enter in combate with him, I will firſt ſee him unarmed, and ſpeak with him, not as an enemy to an enemy, but as friends commonly do one unto the other. Madam (ſaid the Souldan) ſeeing it is your deſire, it were good our Gentlewoman went again unto them, to deſire them to gibe you leabe to come and biſit them in their camp, not to pꝛocure them any cauſe of enby, but to do them bonoꝛ: and foꝛ that cauſe to deſire their ſafe conduct. This counſel ſeemed good unto the Queen, and without longer ſtaying ſhe ſent the Gentlewoman back again unto Amadis and Eſplandian whom ſhe found yet in the Tent whereas ſhe left them. With that ſhe told them what her meſſage was, and the great deſire the Queen had to ſee them beſoꝛe they entred into combate. King Amadis could not refrain laughing to bear the Gentlewoman exꝛeſs the affection her miſtreſs had, asking king Luiſart what he thought therein. Son (ſaid he) deny not her requeſt, foꝛ I aſſure you (ſince our coming bither) I habe heard the Queen to be eſteemed a wiſe and beautiful Pꝛinceſs. You hear our anſwer (ſaid Amadis to the Gentlewoman) let the Queen come bither when ſhe thinketh good, foꝛ ſhe ſhall be heartily welcome. With that the Gentlewoman returned to the Queen, who being greatly pleaſed with that anſwer, determined the nexꝛ day to go unto them. But ſhe knew not well what manner of apparrel ſhe were beſt to wear: ſometimes ſhe thought it fit to go as ſhe uſed when ſhe went to battel, and then pꝛeſently changed opinion, thinking a womans apparrel would be moꝛe ſeemly and conbenient, ſeeing ſhe went not to try their foꝛces, but onely to win the lobe and kaboꝛ of Eſplandian, if ſhe might pꝛocure the ſame. And thinking on it all night long, in the moꝛning when ſhe meant to apparrel her ſelf, ſhe was reſolbed to doꝛeſs her as women uſe to do, thinking ſhe had means enough afterward to ſhew her ſelf in habit of a Knight, whereby ſhe might be ſeen both in the one and the other ſoꝛt. Whereupon ſhe cauſed her

m. A

moſt pꝛecious Robes to be bꝛought unto her, and apparrelling her ſelf, fogꝛot not any thing that might once beautifie oꝛ adoꝛn her perſon, oꝛ that in her opinion would deck her well, the better to be liked. And to bear her company ſhe took twelve of her own gentlewomen, ſo well furniſhed and ſet foꝛth with Stones and Pearls, that the like was neber ſéen. That done, ſhe ſent unto her ſhips foꝛ a moſt ſtrange and monſtrous beaſt: whereupon ſometimes ſhe uſed to ride in great pomp. It was as big as a great Dꝛomadary, the hair long and ſomewhat yellow, black ſpots, his two eares hanging down unto his knées, having but one eye, ſhining bꝛighter then a burning glaſs, and ſtood right in the midſt of his foꝛehead: out of his mouth there iſſued two great teeth like hoꝛns, and although his feet were cloben like an oꝛ, yet was there no Hart in all the woꝛld that could outrun him, were it in plain way, oꝛ ober rocks. In that manner ſhe entered into the Chꝛiſtians camp, of whom ſhe was not a little woꝛndꝛed at befoꝛe ſhe came to King Luiſarts tent, where Amadis, and in a manner all the pꝛincipal captains of the army ſtaꝛed foꝛ her, pꝛaying Quedragant to go out to welcome her, which he did with great courteſie: foꝛ he had no ſooner eſpied her, but he ſtepped foꝛward, and doing her great reberence, holp her to deſcend, and taking her by the arm, led her into the tent, where the Lꝛds were all aſſembled, of whom ſhe was moſt honoꝛably receibed. But when ſhe beheld Eſplandians beauty, ſhe was ſo much ſuꝛpꝛiſed with the lobe of him, that ſhe repented her coming thither, not ſo much foꝛ the ſmall hope ſhe had to win him, (being diders in religion) but doubting that the fantaſie newly entred into her mind would ſo much eſtrange her foꝛce (by obermuch thinking upon him) when ſhe went to fight, that thereby ſhe ſhould be in danger to loſe the honoꝛ and reputation ſhe had gotten in arms among the beſt Knights in all the woꝛld: which to pꝛebent, ſhe determined to ſtay the leſs time there, knowing the nature of lobe to be ſuch, that it can ſteal the hearts of all perſons, and commonly maketh himſelf poſſeſſoꝛ of it, before he that hath it in poſſeſſion, can perceibe it. And as the Pꝛinces entertained her with diders ſwéet and pleaſant ſpeeches, ſhe turned to Eſplandian and ſaid: Sir Knight,

Knight, for two most excellent graces that are in you, I have taken the pains to come and visit you: The first is the gift of beauty, which is such in you, as I could never have imagined the same: The other is the force of your body and magnanimity of your courage, whereby you are accounted altogether invincible. The one I have seen with mine eyes to be so perfect, that I never hope to see the like again, although I lived a thousand years and more: the other, the combate you shall have against the most puissant Souldan of Liquie will be a witness unto us: and had it not bin that he requested me to fight against King Amadis (because his onely desire is to prove his body against yours) I would have tryed it my self. Of one thing can I well assure you, that if the honor remain to us and life to you, I will afterward tell you a thing that much importeth me, and which I greatly desire to let you know before I sail into my country. Now for this time I have satisfied my desire: wherefore my Lords (said she unto all the Princes) I beseech you pardon me in not using longer speeches, for I know full well that my long staying with you, (thinking to finde that I hoped for) might possibly cause me to lose my self, wherewith I should be obermuch displeased, for that before sunsetting I hope to be in place where I will shew such valour in arms, that he which never could be banquished by man (as it is reported) shall now receive an overthrow at a simple womans hand. Madam (said King Perion) fortune can do much when it pleaseth her, if you do as you say, truly you shall do more then we can well believe, but commonly the workman is known by his work, and because the issue of ꝑ combate is the glory of him or you, til then we will defer our judgements. And although Amadis perceived himself much outraged by the queen, yet he made no sign thereof, but taking her by ꝑ arm, led her where her company stayed, and as she mounted to return, with a smiling countenance he spake unto her and said, Madam, when we come to dealing of blows, I beseech you shew me not the greatest extremity you can, because I was always a friend to women, and ever will be during my life: whereunto the queen answered not a word, but rode unto ꝑ Pagans camp to arm her self. Mean time Brian de Moniaste arrived in the Christians camp, who having bin sent by the King of Spain his father with

a great power of men into Africa, to beſiege the town of Ceſonie, after called Centie, was adhertiſed by a pirate, of ꝧ chriſtians enterpꝛiſe, and how their armyꝫ great fleꝛt had paſſed the cape of Finis terre, pꝛeſently ſent unto his father to deſire him to gibe him leabe to go that boyage: whereunto by much impoꝛtunity he granted. Foꝛ which cauſe Brian bꝛake up his ſiege of Cenite, and entring again into his ſhips ſailed to Cicile, and from thence to Galipoli, and ſo to Conſtantinople, where he jꝫyned with the Chꝛiſtian pꝛinces that receibed him moſt gladly.

CHAP. LIII.

How king *Amadis* & *Eſplandian* his ſon, fought againſt the Souldan of *Liqne* and Queen *Calaſre*, and of the battel fought the ſame day both by ſea and land, between the Chriſtians & the Pagans.

QUeen Calafre returned to the Pagans camp as you heard beforꝫe, pꝛeſently armed her ſelf, and the Souldan likewiſe, and ſtayed not long beforꝫe they came unto the place where the combate was aſſigned, where not long after they found Amadis and Eſplandian: and becauſe the camps were not well aſſured of each other (notwithſtanding the oaths and pꝛomiſes on both ſides made) they ſet themſelbes in oꝛder of battel, not ſtirring one foot: King Perion ſending woꝛd to Quedragant and King Childadan, that as they had intelligence from the enemy, they ſhould ſet upon their Army by Sea: the like woꝛd was ſent unto the Emperoꝛ of Conſtantinople, that he might likewiſe be pꝛepared: and as the four Combatants were ready to ſtrike each other, the Souldan called Amadis and Eſplandian, asking them if they would not ſwear and kꝫp pꝛomiſe (accoꝛding to the agrꝫement ſent unto them by his gentlewoman) that the banquiſhers without impeachment ſhould lead away the banquiſhed. I truly, ſaid they, thereforꝫe beware of us. With that Amadis made towards the Queen, and the Souldan againſt Eſplandian, to whom he gabe ſo great a blow with his launce into the ſhield, that he pierced it thꝛough: whereby divers thought aſſuredly he had bꝫn wounded to death, but it was not ſo, foꝛ the launce paſſed under his ſaddle without any further hurt: but Eſplandian

plandian gabe him his exchange, striking him so fiercely, that he made him lose both stirrop and saddle and fall upon the ground, with so great might, that he rolled twice or thrice before he stayed, in such manner, that the helmet flew off his head. Queen Calafre ran against King Amadis, and he against her: and as they were in the middle of their course, Amadis turned the butt end of his launce against her, & passing forward would not strike her: yet she held her launce down and strake his horse in the steel of his forehead, and withal they met so strongly body to body, that therewith the Queen fell down, and Amadis was constrained to light, his horse was so astonished with the truncheon of the launce that stuck within his forehead. But the Queen rose presently, and with her sword in hand went towards Amadis, the like did the Souldan to Esplandian that had suffered him to take breath and lace his helmet, not for any good he wished him, but that at the end of his career he espied the princess Leonorine standing on the walls of Constantinople, whereat he was so abashed, that every man said, the Souldan had hurt him in the body. Nevertheless within short space after they knew the contrary: for he lighted on foot, where between them two was fought the most perillous combat that ever was seen, for Rodrigue was as valiant a Knight in arms as any in his time: but Esplandian handled him in such maner, that oftentimes he made him clean forget the subtilties that commonly be used in such affairs, and in the end used him so hardly, that it might evidently be seen the victory would be his. Mean time the Queen used all her force to overcome King Amadis, who holding in his hand a great truncheon of a launce in stead of a sword, gave her such a blow on the crest of her helmet, that he made her eyes start within her head. Wherewith she being much offended, spake unto him, and said: What sir Knight? Do you think me either to be a dog or else a country clown, that you seem to beat me with a staff? By my head before you escape out of my hands, there is no armor you have but will be needful for you to the safegard of your life. Calafre (said Amadis) all my life time I have been a servant unto Ladies, and if at this time I should begin with you to shew them ill, the good that others have re-

receiued at my hands would be lesse esteemed. You account me then (said the Queen) one of that number: but you shall presently feel that I am something more: with that she took her sword in both hands, and in great choller gaue him such a blow, that she clabe his shield in two, and thinking to double her stroke, Amadis stepped unto her and plucked hers from off her neck, with such force, that she was constrained to kneel upon the ground. Neuertheless she rose presently again, and thinking to be reuenged, used all her force to charge Amadis, who turning aside gaue her such a blow with his truncheon hard by the ear, and therewith made her so astonished, that her sword fell out of her hand: wherewith he stepped forward, and taking her by the helmet, said unto her: Now you shall be my prisoner whether you will or not, as well as the Souldan is prisoner to my son. With that the Queen looked aside and perceiued that Amadis said true: wherefore she said: Truly I am your prisoner, seeing fortune will haue it so: and therewith Rodrigue and Esplandian came unto them, and they four going out of the lists, went unto the Christians camp: the Pagans that saw them led away in whom in a manner consisted most of their hope, when the camps should joyn in battel, made countenance to rescue them: which caused the Christians to stand all day in order of battel: mean time they agreed among themselues to send the Souldan and the Queen unto Constantinople, Gandalin hauing charge to bring them thither, and present them to the Princess Leonorine, from Amadis and Esplandian, who thanked them most heartily. And before he returned again unto the camp, a souldier of Thrace (that had dwelt in Tartaria aboue twenty year together) came and yielded himself unto the Christians, and told King Perion and Luisart, that their enemies determined the next day in the morning to surprise them before they were aware, whereof they aduertised the Emperor of Constantinople, to the end he might be ready. There were in the City forty thousand men, whereof he appointed thirty thousand to issue forth upon the enemies rereward, as soon as they perceiued the battel once begun, and gaue likewise intelligence to King Childadan and Quedragant, that his spies had brought him

news

newes that Alphorax had unfurnished his ships of men to strengthen their army on land, trusting to the straights which they mean to kéep, hoping thereby to sail into the Majorque seas, if fortune favor not their enterprise: and there it would be good(with the other Christian princes advise)that they should set upon him, and that Frandalo with his Fléet should second them. Which newes understood by the two Generals of the army by sea, they sent unto King Amadis and the rest of the Commanders in the Camp, to know their advise: whereunto answer was returned, that they should follow the opinion of the Emperor of Constantinople, which they should execute upon the next day in the morning: whereupon Frandalo ceased not all night to make and prepare divers kinds of artificial fires, wherewith he made account to burn the most part of Alphorax ships,which he did, as hereafter you shall hear. But to return to King Armato and his forces: About an hour before day, according to their former determinations, they began to march against the Christians, thinking to finde them sléeping, and thereby to slay their watch before they should have means to set themselves in order of battel. Nevertheless ther found themselves deceived, for they were already set in order of battel, standing close, with great desire to receive their enemy as they did: the Emperor of Rome had the vantguard,and with him king Luisart:King Amadis,king Perion, Galaor,and Esplandian the main battel: and Florestan,Bruneo,and Balan,the rereguard. On the Pagans side there marched first, the Souldan of Alaxa, threescore Knights, two Califfes, and four Tamorlanes, that in great fury set upon the Emperor of Rome and his battel: where at their first arribal many a brave Knight was stroken down,both on the one side and the other, for Esplandian and the Christian Princes being joyned together, gave not one blow but it was a deadly stroke: yet at the first they were repulsed by the great quantity of arrows the enemies shot against them, which flew in so great number,that hailstones never fell thicker out of the skies:whereby it fell out,that both vantguard,main battel, and reregard, indured much pain: with that Norandel, Talanque, Manlev, Trion,Landin,Licoran,Imosil, Palomir,Enil, Elian, and to conclude,

clude, all Esplandians companions with thirty thousand men chosen by the Emperor, issued out of the City: which small troop (resolutely determined) did so abash the Pagans, that in a manner they all lost their courages: whereby they presently began to recoil as far back as they advanced themselves, wherewith those that before had bin in fear took courage again, and turning their faces on the enemy, recovered the ground that they had lost, in such sort, that with good cause they might well cry, Victory. On the other side, Quedragant and Childadan setting sail, made towards the Straights, at the entry whereof Frandalo overtook them with fourscore vessels of all sorts: and as they had spoken together touching their enterprize, (considering the great power of their enemies) it was agréed that Frandalo (that had proved them at other times) should first set upon them: wherewith he began to sail forwards, and Alphorax likewise against him, giving a sign of battel to his men, who with great courage entred upon ten of the best Gallies the Christians had, and sunk them in the sea: yet Frandalo nought abashed, set fire on more than an hundred of their Ships before Childadan entred into fight: but not long after, he and Quedragant came unto them, where good defence prevailed. In which fight they continued for the space of eight hours without any sign upon which side the victory would fall, until Quedragant boarded Alphorax ship, and entred by force, slaying all that were therein. What need I stand longer to discourse? The Turks séeing their Captain dead, and their manifest overthrow before their faces, being ready to fall into the Christians hands, began to flie, and by force of oars entred into the Majorque sea: but not all, for there were taken, burnt, and drowned about two or thrée hundred Gallies, Galliasses, Foists, and Brigandines, the rest saved themselves in such sort as you heard before: to whom night was so much assistant, that the chase endured not so long as else it would have done. Alphorax dead, and his Army overthrown, the Christians assembled themselves together, staying to hear news from their Army on land, which in the mean time had so much to endure, that wonder it was how they could hold out: and among the rest the good old King Perion and Luisart séeing Esplandian raging like a lyon for-

followed by the Hunters, would not leabe him fearing to loſe him, and ſo long they followed him, ſtriking both on the right ſide and the left, that they found themſelbes incloſed by abobe a thouſand Turkiſh boꝛſemen, not babing any other aid than Grumedan Duke of Briſtol, Guilan, Brandoyuas, Nicoran of the ſilber Bꝛidge, Cendil de gonate, and a few others. Surely thoſe eight oꝛ nine cauſed thoſe that met them to buy full dearly their apꝛoach, as not being the firſt danger wherein they had fallen: neberthelesſ in the end being ober weary and ſoꝛe trabelled with the blows they had giben and receibed, they were clean out of bꝛeath, and the woꝛſt was their boꝛſes were ſlain under them, and they themſelbes ſo ſoꝛe wounded, that they were all ſlain in the place, onely Eſplandian that in a maner could ſcarce liſt up his arms, when King Amadis his father with a great number of French-men found him there: whereat the battel begun fiercer than ever it had been, foꝛ Amadis and his company ſeing the Kings dead, and their companions lying on the ground, and Eſplandian fighting in the middle of them on foot, they were in a maner mad, and therewith made ſuch ſlaughter, that the Turks were foꝛced to ſeparate themſelbes, and Eſplandian boꝛſed again, and being on boꝛſeback, notwithſtanding all his wounds, he ſhewed well that his body was not weary, foꝛ he followed the enemies in ſuch ſoꝛt, (moved with grief to ſee his friends dead) that in ſhoꝛt ſpace (by the aid of his father and the reſt that followed him) he foꝛced the Souldan of Alaxa and his ſoldiers to turn their backs and flie, and in his flight gabe him ſuch a blow with his ſwoꝛd upon the head, that he ſtrake him dead, and moꝛe than an hundꝛed Pagans with him: Amadis likewiſe did ſo baliantly, with all the knights of France, Great Brittain, and Sweathland, eſpecially the king of Denmark, Talanque, Ambor, and Norandel, that wonder it was to ſee, yet had their baloꝛ little pꝛebailed without the aid that the Emperoꝛ of Conſtantinople bꝛought thither, with a great Troop of Hoꝛſe-men that the Emperoꝛ of Rome had likewiſe gathered together: by which means King Armato with thirty other Kings and their Retinue, were clean oberthꝛown, and the moſt part of them put to the ſwoꝛd: the Chꝛiſtian Knights making ſuch ſlaughter, that

the

the blood ran about the field in such abundance, as if it had rained blood a whole day together: and greater had the abundance bẽn if night had not come on, which separated them, the Western Princes remaining incamped in the field, till day opened, that they might accomplish their desires. Mean time Amadis caused Watch and Sentinels to be set in all places, because he had bẽn advertised that King Armato that had fled away, assembled his men by little and little, which to do he caused horns and drums to sound throughout the field, making fire round about the place where he had retired, sending two Knights to the sea side to know what had happened to his son: but news was brought him that he was slain, and all his ships burnt and drowned, except fifty or threescore that were at the end of the straights of the Majorque sea, staying to hear news of him: assure your selves that such news pleased him not too well, nevertheless, perceiving it more convenient to supply his own necessity than to spend the time in sorrow and tears, he called such captains as he had together, with whom he determined presently to depart, and before day to imbarque that small number of men that rested, before the Christians should perceive the same. With that he commanded from place to place that every man should presently retire, and without noise make towards the sea: where being arrived, they entred into their ships flying towards Tartaria in all the haste they could: whereof the Emperor of Constantinople being advertised, sent Frandalo and divers Gallies with him to follow them, but all in vain: in the mean time the hurt Knights and soldiers were brought into the City, and the dead buried each according to his degree: wherein the Emperor shewed great affection, especially as touching the burial of the Kings Perion and Luisart, for whom, Esplandian (coming to the Empire) and those that succeeded after him, caused two Pyramides to be made, not any thing inferior to those which sometime were erected in the City of Memphis, as well for the Kings Miris, Chemnis, as others: and hard by them they buried the bodies of the valiant knights Balan, Helian, Polimner, Enil, Grumedan, the good old man, and divers other knights that died in that battel, fighting in the defence

of

of the faith of Jesus Christ, with whom their blessed souls do now remain in joy. And because no mention hath bèen made of Quèen Calafre since her captivity, neither of the aid that she had brought unto the Pagan kings, it seemeth reason that I should declare the occasion why her women fought not with the rest: you must understand, that the Quèen perceiving her in one day to be taken not onely with the lobe of ỹ knight Esplandian, but by the force of his father king Amadis, not long after she had bèen in the company of the Princess Leonorine, to whom Gandalin brought her, she sent unto her Sister Lyote to will her with her women to return to sea, keeping apart from all the Pagans, without once stirring from thence, for any thing whatsoever should fall, till she received further news from her, which was partly the cause of the enemies overthrow: for they doubting some treason, being separated in that sort, from that time forward were in some fear and in greater suspition than before: and not without cause, for that if Lyote had aided king Armato both by sea and land, as she might have done, if her sister had not forbidden her, it is likely her esquadron of women being twenty thousand strong and somewhat more, had done great mischief to the Christians: but God of his goodness provided better for them.

CHAP. LIIII.

How after the Pagans were driven out of *Thrace*, the Emperor of *Constantinople* renouncing his Empire, invested *Esplandian* therewith, marrying him to his daughter the princess *Leonorine*.

The Obsequies and Funerals of the kings, Princes Lords and others, that died in the battel, being finished, the wounded cured, and all things set at rest: the Emperor of Constantinople knowing that Amadis and those that were come with him from the Western parts, would return again into their countries, desired them to assemble, shewing them that his meaning was to let them know what he determined to do before they went from thence: The next day in the morning they all met in the Emperors great hall, and he standing in the middest, spake unto them and said: My brethren, Lords, and good friends, the bond wherein I stand bounden unto you is so great,

that although it hath pleased God to make me Emperor of all Grecia, yet I am well assured, it is far beyond my poor ability to satisfie you for the same, esteeming the honor and riches that I now have (next under God) be it little or much, to proceed from you: I am now threescore years of age, wholly aged and decrepit, by reason of the pains that in my youthful years I have continually taken in following arms: so it is I have but one child, which is a Daughter, the onely staff and hope of my old years, whom I have determined (if you think good) to give in marriage unto the valiant Knight Esplandian, and with her likewise to inbest him with the Empire and Government of all my Countreys. And the better to live solitarily, and to separate my self from worldly company, I have determined to go (with the Empress my Wife) into the Monastery that I caused to be made, there to live religiously, calling upon God, and doing penance for the evils I have committed heretofore. Wherefore my good Lord and friends I pray you, if this my determination like you well, let every man give consent, and you first (said he unto king Amadis) to whom the matter toucheth nearer than to any of the rest, as being father and son. My Lord (said he) my son shall do as you command him. I will tell you (said the Emperor) I remember that among other Prophecies which ought to happen in this our time, there is one that maketh me (as I think) agree with you in one consent. Esplandian hath on his body (as I have understood) certain characters, which shew his name and others that in no wise can be read, but only by the woman that is ordained to be his wife, let us now see if it be my daughter or not: with that he sent for the Princess Leonorine, who being brought thither by the Empress and divers other Ladies, the Emperor desired Esplandian, to open his doublet and shew them the letters he had born upon his body from his mothers womb, which he refused not, but before them all shewed them openly, where every man might easily perceive the white characters, containing this word Esplandian, but they could not know the red: wherefore the Emperor caused his Daughter to come neer, asking her what she could do therein: My Lord (said she) not long before Melie betrayed Urganda, she and I being alone in my chamber, she sent to

fetch

fetch one of the books that had bin taken from her, covered with gold, whereon the Enchantress was engraven, and I remember that I saw therein the like characters that Esplandian beareth on his body, and ober them their signification, which is nothing else but his name and mine. Daughter (said the Emperor) if you habe the book still, cause it to be brought hither: whereunto she obeyed. The book being brought, she shewed him the place that Melie had read unto her, containing that which followeth: The happy knight that shal conquer the sword and the great treasure inchanted by me, shall from his mothers womb bear his name in white characters, and the name of her that shal be his wife in red characters upon his body, which red characters shal be so difficult to understand, that no man living in that time, how wise or learned soever he be, shall express the same without he see this book, which will teach him what the seven characters do signifie, representing the seven words that follow, *Leonorine Daughter of the Emperor of Greece.* In good faith (said the Emperor) here is a strange case. and sheweth well ỳ the Enchantress Lady had more knowledge in art magick, then any that lived in her time: & seeing my daughter hath so well divined, I am determined that you (said he to the Archbishop of Thrace) do grant unto Esplandian that which nature before his birth had promised to him, which is my daughter Leonorine. By which means the marriage was solemnised and finished the same day with no great ceremonies, the Court being as yet troubled for the death of so many princes and great Lords that were slain in the battel. But let it suffice to know, that those two Lovers enjoyed the thing which they so long desired, Esplandian the same day being proclaimed Emperor of Greece, according to the commandment of his father in law: who within two months after, with the Empress his wife, went to a monastery and place of devotion. And because queen Calafre had always pretended to marry with Esplandian, perceiving her intent frustrate, she could not refrain to speak in presence of the all, & said unto them: My Lord, I beseech you give me leabe to declare my mind. It is certain (said she) ỳ those which know me are not ignorant ỳ I am one of the greatest & most puissant princess

in all the east parts, by reason of the great quantity of gold and precious stones that are within my countries. As touching my linage, I am daughter of a Quéen of ancient race, and as noble as any that ever was in the world: so it is that fortune brought me into these marches, promising me shortly to return laden with great number of slaves and abundance of treasure: but to the contrary, I that pretended and sought the captivity of others, finde my self taken and better holden prisoner then they that are in their mortal enemies hands. This imprisonment whereof I speak, is not that whereunto I am bound by the faith I have given unto king Amadis, having banquished me by force, which I certainly know to be wholly subject to fortune: but the imprisonment whereof I now complain, is that wherein my heart hath inclosed it self, and hath the onely moving by the sole beauty and favor I have found in the new and most happy Emperor, estéeming my self to be such, that I hoped (leaving my law to accept of yours) to have had him for my lord and husband, although my hope by little and little began to diminish, when I perceived ỳ Princess Leonorine to be more recommended in al perfections then any that ever I heard of, or ever have séen: so that (speaking against my self) it had bèen impossible to finde a more equal match, nor more conformable one unto the other, then the marriage of them together: which maketh me believe that fortune extendeth wholly to eternize this my passion, wherein I will (if I can) so much impeach her, that forgetting my first affection, and if it will please him to give me another husband worthy my estate, I will accept it willingly together with baptism and the law of Christ, which you do hold. When the Emperor Esplandian saw her good pretence, he began to comfort her in the best manner he could, and calling Talanque (a fair lusty and well disposed Gentleman) he said unto the Quéen: Madam, this Gentlewoman I offer unto you, is my cousin, and son unto king Galaor, one of the best knights as I think living in the world, I pray you at my request refuse him not for your lord and husband, assuring you, that I know no Princess (how great soever she be) living in the world, but might content her self with him. The Quéen beheld him with so good affection, that she eas-

ily

ly beliebed Eſplandian, and ſaid unto bim : Upon your woꝛd my Loꝛd I will accept of him, and from this time foꝛward yield my ſelf to be bis wife, and will foꝛ his ſake do ſo much, that the Iſland wherein I and others my pꝛedeceſſoꝛs would not ſuffer a man to live, ſhall from henceforth be goverued by him as other countries are by their Kings and Pꝛinces. And becauſe her ſiſter Liote was not at that aſſembly but with her ſhips lying in the ſtraights (as Quéen Calafre had commanded her as you heard beforꝛe) ſhe deſired the Emperoꝛ to ſend foꝛ her, who pꝛeſently ſent ẏ admiral Tartary to fetch her : ſhe being come, and having heard her ſiſters mind, eaſily agréed thereto, and by the ſame meanes was married to Manley the wiſe, both eſpouſed at one time, and being baptiſed, cauſed all their army to do the like: which done, not long after thoſe new married couples taking their leaves of the Kings, Pꝛinces, Loꝛds, Ladies, and Gentlewomen of the Court, they imbarqued themſelves, Manley having with him the veſſels wherein Childadan his father arrived in the eaſt, and Talanque thoſe of king Galaor, which they cauſed to be fraighted and laden with all things neceſſary foꝛ ſo ſtrange a country. And ſetting ſail foꝛ Californie, not without great trouble, (which in the end they obercame) they arrived in ſafety, where afterward they had many battels with their neighboꝛs boꝛdering about them, whom they obercame, augmenting their dominions with many great lands and teꝛritoꝛies. But becauſe the ſubject of our Hiſtoꝛy is not further to intreat of them, we will foꝛ this pꝛeſent leave them to go on with that which afterward was done in the City of Conſtantinople. You heard beforꝛe of the love of Norandel and Quéen Minoreſſe, that daily increaſed in them moꝛe and moꝛe, which the Empꝛeſs knowing full well, cauſed them to be married together, the Emperoꝛ giving to Norandel the Caſtle of the defended mountain, with the towns of Alfarin and Galatia, foꝛ the which he recompenced Frandalo with the rich, fertile and well peopled Iſles of Galatines. Mean time the Emperoꝛ Eſplandian not foꝛgetting the impꝛiſonment of Urganda, one day among the reſt (not long beforꝛe the Pꝛinces of the Weſt imbarqued themſelves to return into their countries) he ſhewed them in what

ſoꝛt

sort Melie had taken her away, and by inchantment carried her to the great city of Tesifant, where he held her prisoner in a great tower, desiring them most earnestly to give him counsel what he might do therein. Son (said king Amadis) it were good you sent unto Armato to offer him for her the Souldan of Liquie that is your prisoner: and if he refuse you so to do, we will enter into his country and fetch her thence by force. Whereunto they al agreed, so that without longer delay Carmelle was sent to Tesifant, imbarquing her self with four squires, and three gentlewomen, and with a good wind arrived at the castle of the defended mountain, where she remained certain days, staying for king Armatos passport which by one of her women she sent to fetch, who found Armato as melancholly as might be, feeling as yet his fortune past, specially the death of his son Alphorax, which without ceasing he continually lamented. With that the gentlewoman gave him to understand the cause of her arrival, wherewith he was so well pleased, & presently he caused Carmelles safe conduct to be made, and giving it to the messenger, said unto her: My friend, return unto your mistris and assure her from me, that she may come unto my court as often as it pleaseth her, remembring well the pleasures she shewed unto me during my imprisonment. The gentlewoman thanked him most heartily, and returned to Carmelle: who within few days after went to Tesifant to Armato, where she declared at large the effect of her embassage, which heard by king Armato and considring with himself, that for Urganda he might recover one of his greatest friends, and thereby cause the Christian Princes for a time to refrain the overrunning of his country, sent presently for Melie, desiring her in all affection (for his sake) to grant to his desire and the pleasure of the Christians, considring the offer made by them was both advantage unto him and his. Melie desirous to please Armato, brake her inchantments, and without delay Urganda was delivered unto Carmelle, upon condition, & she being arrived in the city of Constantinople, should likewise set the Souldan of Liquie at liberty, which she swore and promised to do: which done, taking their leave of Armato, they travelled so long, that they came unto & castle the defended mountain, where Urganda caused them to leave Carmelles ship to enter into the great serpent that as yet

she found there, which presently of it self began to sail, as it had always done before Urganda was in prison, in such manner, that without impeachment they arrived in the Haven of Constantinople, where the Princes and lords being on shoar, descended to the water side to receive Urganda: And thinking to bring her to the palace, she desired them to stay there till a prophesie were accomplished, that should be done before the sun went down, which they agreed unto: not onely to please her mind, but likewise desiring to see what it should be. With ỹ they were abashed that the great serpent began to leap and labor in the water, as if it had bin in the greatest storm ỹ ever was, although the sea was very calm, but only about the serpent, where it raged in most horrible maner, but that which most abashed the beholders was, that the beast cast forth such horrible cries, that not one among them but his hair stood upright upon his head for fear. And having continued in ỹ maner about half an hour & more, ỹ serpent thrust his head into the water, wherewith it sunk and never was seen again. And with that they perceived a far off a great rock, which being driven by the waves, came within half a bow shot nèer unto the shore, on the top whereof stood a woman bareheaded, and covered only with a linen cloth to hide her privities, being inviron-ned by more then a thousand serpents as well great as small, which stung her in such sort, ỹ she wept & lamented in most pitiful maner, wherat the knights of great Brittain had so much compassion, ỹ they thought to enter into the ships, to go & help her: which Urganda forbad them. For (said she) besides ỹ dangers that may happen, you shall lose your labors, because she whom you behold (which is the inchantress lady) hath ordained it to be so. With ỹ the rock sunk into the water & the gentlewoman banished out of sight, but not long after she appeared again upon the waves, flying from the fury of a monster of the sea, that with his throat open followed after, ready to devour her, in such manner, that she came right unto the haven, crying with a loud voice unto Esplandian: Gentle Emperor, I pray you help me for none but you can do it: wherewith Esplandian stepped forward, and behold the sword he conquered in the old pallace of the inchanted Rock in his hand, ran unto her, and thinking to go neer the Monster the Gentlewoman that fled from it,

caught

caught hold of his sword, and whether he would or not took it away, wherewith she threw her self into the sea, and the monster after her. Whereat every man began to laugh, saying to the Emperor, that if a gentlewoman had predestinated the same unto him, and kept it long time, another gentlewomen or she her self upon a sudden had taken it from him again. With that Urganda was led unto the palace, accompanied by the Emperor with all the kings and knights: where not long after the Soldan of Liquie was delivered and sent to Tesifant, and about the beginning of the next week after the western pinces took shipping: and being imbarqued with Urganda (recommending the Emperor to God) sailed forwards, till at the last every man arrived at his desired haven, namely king Amadis, that found Oriane very sad for the death of her mother newly deceased, which much more increased when she knew her father king Luisart was dead. But in the end, time made her to forget her sorrow, but not so soon as Amadis could have wished.

CHAP. LV.

How the Emperor *Esplandian* sent *Norandel* to take possession of the country he had given him, and of the taking of *Tesifant*.

NOt long after the western princes were departed into their countries, the Emperor Esplandian would that Norandel should go unto the Castle of the defended mountain, and other towns that he had given him, to make war against king Armato, for which cause he gave him a great number of soldiers, with the which to make short he assailed the king of Turky, and had battel together, wherein many a valiant knight lost their lives: nevertheless, the victory fell on Norandels side, whereby he caused Armato to fly away, retiring to his city of Tesifant, which being known unto the Emperor, he departed from Constantinople, and with a great army going into Turky, joyned with Norandels power, and besieged Tesifant, but fear seized so wel upon Armato, that he found means to flie away, and leave the town, which not long after was taken, and the Princess Heliaxe brought unto the emperor, who used her courteously, and sent her again unto her father Amphaon king of Medea, giving her divers rich Presents. News being spread throughout the coun-

country of Turky of the fight of king Armato, as also of the taking of Tesifant, divers towns and cities yielded to Esplandian, that gave them likewise to Norandel: & because winter came on he returned into Thrace, where two of his nephews, sons of Galaor came to visit him, and to receive the order of knighthood: which he gave unto them with both armor & horses, minding to request them to travel to Tesifant unto Norandel, there to begin their first intrance into arms, but they desired rather to take the way to Californie, where Manley and Talanque had great war against their neighbors; which the Emperor perceiving, caused all things necessary for so long a voyage to be given them, with so good Pilots, that in the end they arrived at their desired Haven, where they attained to great honor and estimation among the best Knights. But not to enter further to discourse of them, we will for this present let them rest. And let it suffice you to know, how that as time passed, Perion succéeded in his fathers seat, and Garinter married in the east parts with Heletria quéen of Citharee, and was the best knight in all the world. And because it is declared at large in the firth and sebenth books of this our History, we will pass it over at this time.

CHAP. LVI.

How *Urganda* sent to desire king *Amadis*, the Emperor *Esp'andian*, *Don Galaor* king of *Sobradise*, and others, to come unto the *Firm Isle*, and of the marvellous inchantments that she made over them.

URganda being in her Isle not as yet discovered, taking great pleasure to read Melies Books, knew by her art death to be near unto the Kings and Princes whom she most loved, and having great sorrow that worms should consume the flesh of so valiant Knights, devised to prevent the same, which to do she took sea, accompanied of her two cousins Juliande and Solisde, with divers other Gentlewomen, and went unto the Firm Isle, where being arrived, she sent to the Emperor Esplandian, Amadis, Galaor, Floreslan, Agraies, and Gransador, praying them most earnestly to come unto her to the palace of Apolidon, for matter that touched them most near, otherwise she sent them word, if they did it not, that before long time past evil would happen unto them, and that master Elizabeth should bring with him the book that he made of the Adventures of the knights living in his time, as also that they should

bring their wives with Ardan the dwarf, Carnelle, Gandalin, and the Gentlewoman of Denmark. Those princes having understood Urgandas mind failed not therein, so that about the same time she willed them to come, they all arrived there: where Urganda received them, not with a smiling countenance as she used ordinarily to do, but with tears in her eyes, whereat they being much abashed, desired her to shew the cause thereof, which at the first she could not do, her heart was so full of grief. Nevertheless, in the end she took courage again, and said unto them: My good friends, even as by the goodness of Almighty God, all things have been established and made, so it pleaseth him that all temporal things should pass away, and by death have an end, according to the qualities of his creatures: Which divers great persons considering with themselves, have travelled (during their lives) in many sorts, after their deaths to leave some memory of them, not minding to bury their renown together with their bodies. Now I know for certain that the end of your days is nèer: wherefore it is most requisite, that you be constant, and shew your selves to be the same you were at the beginning. Nevertheless before that death shall seize upon you, I will shew the love that I have always born unto you, and with the help of God, will do so much, that without death you shall remain asleep, until the time that one descended of your race shall deliver you from them, and after that shall be in as good case and raign again within your countries as you did before: otherwise assure your selves that before six months do come into an end, not one of you shall be alive, but all buried in the earth. Wherefore let every man shew me his opinion, and for the rest (said she) let me provide. Surely that speech and news of death was so hard for them to endure, that not one of them but changed colour, their hearts being seized with an extream sorrow. And as they beheld each other, King Amadis seeming least astonished, answered unto Urganda, and said: Madam, we know for certain, that not one of us, nor any other living creature can perfectly know what is necessary for us, but onely you alone: wherefore do with us as you think good, and we will all obey you: that is sufficient (said Urganda) therefore let every man put on his armor in the same manner he useth when he goeth to the field, and each man hold his sword naked in his hand: that done, she caused them to go into the for-

bidden

bidden chamber, setting them in their royal seats, with all their wives by them: which done, Urgandas two cousins, Juliande and Soliſde in two basons of gold brought a certain composition, wherwith she desired them to wash their faces, which they did. Whereby it happened, that on a sudden, beauty (which Age and Time had decayed in them) began again to appear within their faces, in as great perfection as ever it had done: which adventure pleased the Ladies so well, that they began to behold each other, and their husbands thereat to be much abashed. Then Urganda called master Elizabeth, and taking him by the hand, led him into the next chamber, where she caused him to sit down, and putting the book that he had brought into her hands, she made signs to Gandalin and the gentlewoman of Denmark that they should follow her: and passing through the Ark of faithful lovers, they entred into the garden, where the images of Apolidon and Grimanaise were placed: over the which she set them and Ardan the dwarf hard by them, wherewith she said unto them: My friends, the true and faithful lovers have bin worthy to see these images before the Ark sometimes inchanted, so you deserve this place for the faith and true affection that you have always born to your masters. Wherefore upon your lives, see you depart not hence whatsoever you shall hear or see: that done, she went unto the chamber where she left the Emperor, and taking Carmelle by the hand, before them all she said unto her: Carmelle, you were but of mean parentage, but the vertue and great courtesie of your heart hath so much inabled you, that you shall be placed at the Emperors fleet to fulfil the promise made unto him, which was, never to forsake him while you lived. With that she spake unto King Amadis and all the other Princes, praying them not to stir till she returned again: and going up into one of the towers of the pallace, she took with her the best of Medeas books which Melie had, that sometime belonged to the Enchantress Lady: and being in the tower she uncovered her head, with that she began to read certain conjurations, and looking into all the four quarters of the earth, making signs and tokens with her fingers, her face became so red, that it seemed fire had issued out of her eyes. Whereupon there happened such an earthquake and so great tempests of lightning and thunder, as though the Elements had fought together. This tempest continuing for

the

the ſpace of three quarters of an hour, thoſe whom ſhe had cauſed to ſit down (as you heard before) remained in a trance without all knowledge, as if they had been dead: and with that there appeared a cloud ſo obſcure and thick which inbironed the place, that never after it could be ſeen, till Luiſart of Greece ſon to Eſplandian brought that inchantment to an end, by means of a ſword which he conquered, as it ſhall be declared to you in the firſt Book: wherein is deſcribed one of the moſt pleaſant and delectable Hiſtories that ever was read. At which time all the Princes, and the reſt were revived again, and not before. The Emperor Eſplandian at that time had a ſon after his grandfathers name called Luiſart, as then about the age of eight years: King Amadis a ſon and a daughter, the ſon named Perion, and the daughter Briſene that married the eldeſt ſon of the Emperor of Rome: King Galaor two ſons, the one named Perion, and other Garinter, of whom I have ſhewed you before: Floreſtan the King of Sardaigne two ſons, the one named Floreſtan after his father, that raigned after him, and the other Palmindan of Almain after his grandfather: Agrayes Earl of Salandry two ſons, the one called Languines, the other Galmenes: King Brewneo one ſon named Vallade, and a daughter named Heliſenne that married Quedragants ſon, and bare his fathers name: King Childadan two ſons, the eldeſt called Abies of Ireland after his grandfather, whom Amadis ſlew the firſt day he entred into Knighthood. And although theſe Princes left ſuch heirs as you heard before, yet would they not during their fathers abſence, take on them the names or titles of Kings, hoping by Gods help, that they ſhould once return as well as ever they were. For the which cauſe they having attained to the age and ſtrength to bear arms, paſſed into Ireland, there to be made Knights by King Childadan, being as then very weak and withered with age: which done, they followed ſtrange adventures, doing many valiant feats of Arms, which are at large declared in the Book that follow, which in time may come unto your hands, when it pleaſeth God.

FINIS.

REPRODUCED FROM THE COPY IN THE

HENRY E. HUNTINGTON LIBRARY

FOR REFERENCE ONLY. NOT FOR REPRODUCTION